

## 2002 Accord Sedan Online Reference Owner's Manual

Use these links (and links throughout this manual) to navigate through this reference.

For a printed owner's manual, click on authorized manuals or go to [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

## Contents

---

### [Owner's Identification Form](#)

<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>i</b>
<b>A Few Words About Safety</b> .....	<b>ii</b>
<b>Your Car at a Glance</b> .....	<b>2</b>
<b>Driver and Passenger Safety</b> .....	<b>5</b>
Proper use and care of your car's seat belts, and Supplemental Restraint System.	
<b>Instruments and Controls</b> .....	<b>53</b>
Instrument panel indicator and gauge, and how to use dashboard and steering column controls.	
<b>Comfort and Convenience Features</b> .....	<b>103</b>
How to operate the climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.	
<b>Before Driving</b> .....	<b>193</b>
What gasoline to use, how to break-in your new car, and how to load luggage and other cargo.	
<b>Driving</b> .....	<b>207</b>
The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park, plus towing a trailer.	
<b>Maintenance</b> .....	<b>235</b>
The Maintenance Schedule shows you when you need to take your car to the dealer.	
<b>Appearance Care</b> .....	<b>303</b>
Tips on cleaning and protecting your car. Things to look for if your car ever needs body repairs.	
<b>Taking Care of the Unexpected</b> .....	<b>311</b>
This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and how to handle them.	
<b>Technical Information</b> .....	<b>339</b>
ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.	
<b>Warranty and Customer Relations (U.S. and Canada)</b> .....	<b>355</b>
A summary of the warranties covering your new Honda, and how to contact us.	
<b>Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)</b> .....	<b>359</b>
How to order manuals and other technical literature.	
<b>Index</b> .....	<b>I</b>

### [Service Information Summary](#)

A summary of information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.



Congratulations! Your selection of a 2002 Honda Accord was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new Honda is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your car so you can refer to it at any time.

Several warranties protect your new Honda. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your car according to the schedules given in this manual helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your car needs maintenance, keep in mind that your Honda dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your Honda. Your Honda dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

## California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** This product contains or emits chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your Honda, other property, or the environment.

# A Few Words About Safety


---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this car safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your car. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the car.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**.

These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this car correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts properly. It explains your Supplemental Restraint System. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your car.

Important Safety Precautions .....	6
Your Car's Safety Features .....	7
Seat Belts .....	8
Airbags .....	9
Seats & Seat-Backs .....	10
Head Restraints .....	10
Door Locks .....	10
Pre-Drive Safety Checklist .....	11
Protecting Adults .....	12
1. Close and Lock the Doors .....	12

2. Adjust the Front Seats .....	13
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs .....	14
4. Adjust the Head Restraints ....	15
5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts .....	15
6. Adjust the Steering Wheel .....	18
7. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position .....	18
Advice for Pregnant Women .....	19
Additional Safety Precautions ....	20
Protecting Children .....	21
All Children Must Be Restrained .....	21
Children Should Sit in the Back Seat .....	22
The Passenger's Front Airbag Poses Serious Risks to Children .....	22
If You Must Drive with Several Children .....	24
If a Child Requires Close Attention .....	25
Additional Safety Precautions ....	25
General Guidelines for Using Child Seats .....	26
Protecting Infants .....	30

Protecting Small Children .....	33
Protecting Larger Children .....	36
Using Child Seats with Tethers .....	39
Using LATCH .....	40
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts .....	42
Seat Belt System Components ...	42
Lap/Shoulder Belt .....	42
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners .....	43
Seat Belt Maintenance .....	44
Additional Information About Your Airbags .....	45
SRS Components .....	45
How Your Front Airbags Work .....	45
How Your Side Airbags Work ...	47
How the SRS Indicator Light Works .....	47
How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Light Works .....	48
Airbag Service .....	50
Additional Safety Precautions ....	50
Carbon Monoxide Hazard .....	51
Safety Labels .....	52

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

## **Always Wear Your Seat Belt**

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags supplement seat belts, but airbags are designed to inflate only in a moderate to severe frontal collision. So even though your car is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly. (See page [15](#).)

## **Restrain All Children**

Children are safest when they are properly restrained in the back seat, not the front seat. A child who is too small for a seat belt must be properly restrained in a child safety seat. (See page [21](#).)

## **Be Aware of Airbag Hazards**

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained.

Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual. (See page [7](#).)

## **Don't Drink and Drive**

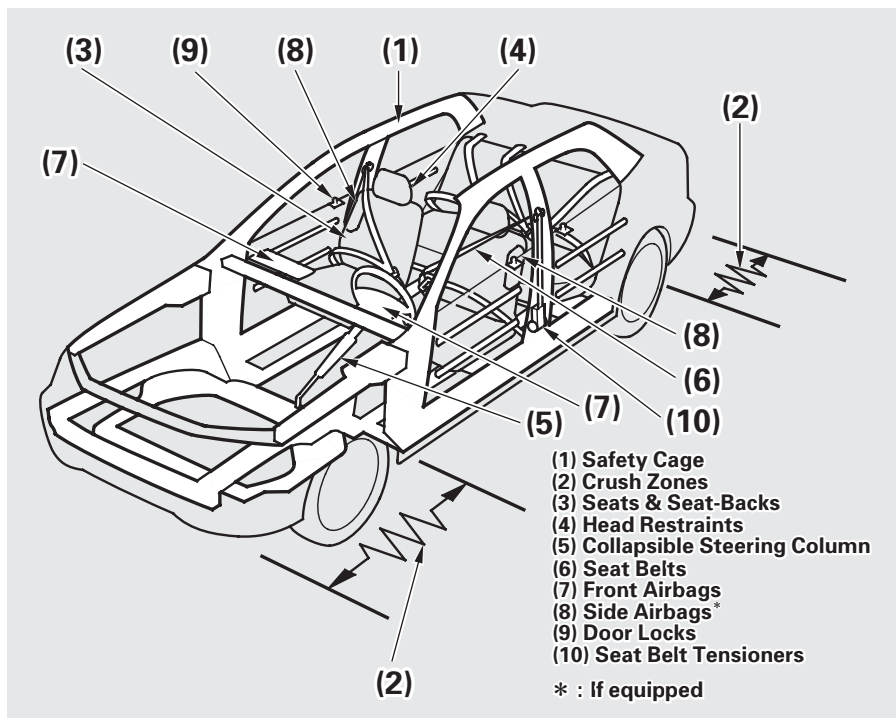
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

## **Control Your Speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed the greater the risk, but serious accidents can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

## **Keep Your Car in Safe Condition**

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance. (See page [240](#).)



Your car is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some safety features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment; front and rear crush zones that are designed to crumple and absorb energy during a crash; a collapsible steering column; and seat belt tensioners that automatically tighten the front seat belts in the event of a crash.

These safety features are designed to reduce the severity of injuries in a crash. However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these safety features unless you remain sitting in a proper position and *always wear your seat belts properly*. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Seat Belts

For your safety, and the safety of your passengers, your car is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.



Your seat belt system also includes a light on the instrument panel to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

### *Why Wear Seat Belts*

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child seats.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your car has airbags.

In addition, most states and all Canadian provinces require you to wear seat belts.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even if you have airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

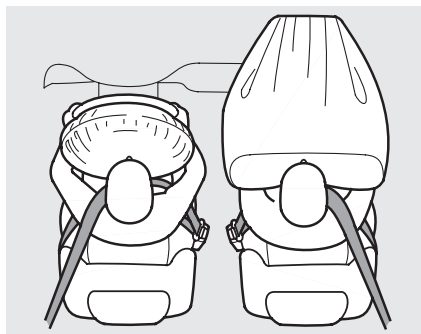
- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the car's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including frontal, side, and rear impacts and rollovers.

- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

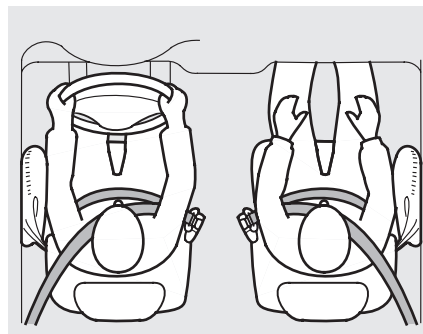
Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

### Airbags



Your car has a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision.



*Standard on V-6 and U.S. EX models. Optional on the U.S. DX, Value Package, LX, and SE models*

Your car also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact.

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

*CONTINUED*



- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear impacts, rollovers, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force and speed. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries, or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

***What you should do:*** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back as possible from the steering wheel or dashboard.

## Seats & Seat-Backs

Your car's seats are designed to keep you in a comfortable, upright position so you can take full advantage of the protection offered by seat belts and the energy absorbing materials in the seats.

How you adjust your seats and seat-backs can also affect your safety. For example, sitting too close to the steering wheel or dashboard increases the risk of you or your passenger being injured by striking the inside of the car, or by an inflating airbag.

Reclining a seat-back too far reduces the seat belt's effectiveness and increases the chance that the seat's occupant will slide under the seat belt in a crash and be seriously injured.

***What you should do:*** Move the front seats as far back as possible, and keep adjustable seat-backs in an upright position whenever the car is moving.

## Head Restraints

Head restraints can help protect you from whiplash and other injuries. For maximum protection, the back of your head should rest against the center of the head restraint.

## Door Locks

Keeping your doors locked reduces the chance of being thrown out of the car during a crash. It also helps prevent occupants from accidentally opening a door and falling out, and outsiders from unexpectedly opening your doors.

## Pre-Drive Safety Checklist

To make sure you and your passengers get the maximum protection from your car's safety features, check the following each time before you drive away:

- All adults, and children who have outgrown child safety seats, are wearing their seat belts and wearing them properly (see page 15 ).
- Any infant or small child is properly restrained in a child seat in the back seat (see page 21 ).

- Front seat occupants are sitting upright and as far back as possible from the steering wheel and dashboard (see page 13 ).
- Seat-backs are upright (see page 14 ).
- Head restraints are properly adjusted (see page 15 ).
- All doors are closed and locked (see page 12 ).
- All cargo is properly stored or secured (see page 204 ).

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in severe crashes, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

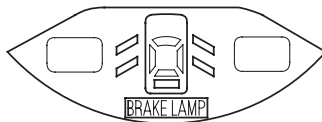
## Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver and other adult occupants.

These instructions also apply to children who have outgrown child seats and are large enough to wear lap/shoulder belts. (See page 36 for important additional guidelines on how to properly protect larger children.)

## 1. Close and Lock the Doors

After everyone has entered the car, be sure the doors are closed and locked.



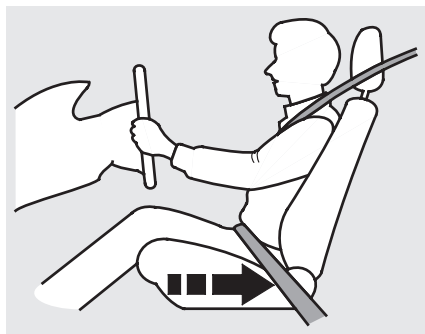
Your car has a door monitor light on the instrument panel to indicate when a specific door is not tightly closed.

For safety, locking the doors reduces the chance that a passenger, especially a child, will open a door while the car is moving and accidentally fall out. It also reduces the chance of someone being thrown out of the car during a crash.

For security, locked doors can prevent an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door when you come to a stop.

See page 73 for how to lock the doors.

## 2. Adjust the Front Seats



Any driver who sits too close to the steering wheel is at risk of being seriously injured or killed by striking the steering wheel or from being struck by an inflating front airbag during a crash.

To reduce the chance of injury, wear your seat belt properly, sit upright with your back against the seat and move the seat away from the steering wheel to the farthest distance that allows you to maintain full control of the car.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers adjust the seat so the center of the chest is at least 10 inches away from the center of the steering wheel. Also make sure your front seat passenger moves the seat as far to the rear as possible.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

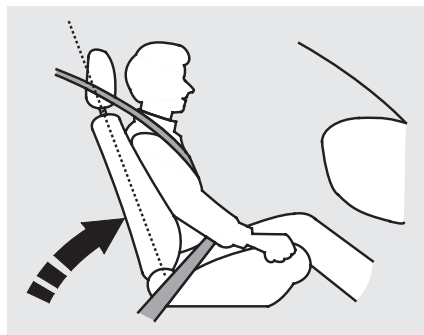
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

Most shorter drivers can get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the pedals. However, if you are concerned about sitting too close, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Once your seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure the seat is locked in position.

See page [82](#) for how to adjust the front seats.

## 3. Adjust the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel. If you sit too close to the steering wheel, you could be injured if the front airbag inflates.

A front passenger should also adjust the seat-back to an upright position, but as far from the dashboard as possible. A passenger who sits too close to the dashboard could be injured if the front airbag inflates.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

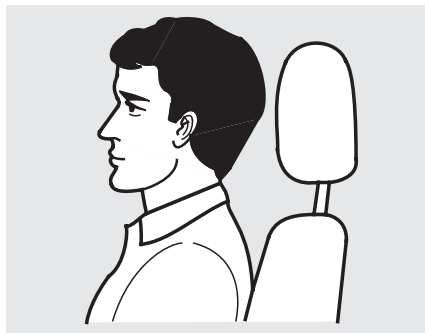
### **⚠ WARNING**

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position and sit well back in the seat.

See page [82](#) for how to adjust seat-backs.

## 4. Adjust the Head Restraints



Before driving, make sure everyone with an adjustable head restraint has properly positioned the head restraint. The restraint should be positioned so the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. A taller person should adjust the restraint as high as possible.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page [86](#) for how to adjust the head restraints.

## 5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Also check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

*CONTINUED*



Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack from the shoulder part, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This

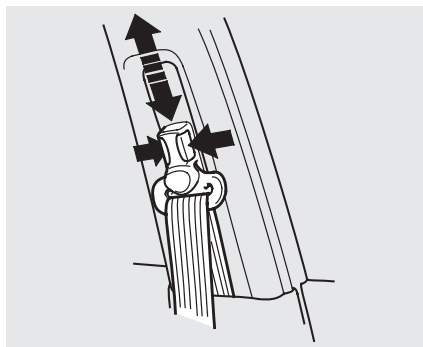
spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.



To adjust the height of a front seat belt anchor, squeeze the two release buttons and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

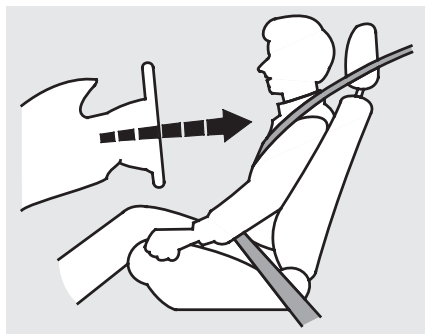
***Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.***

If a seat belt does not seem to work as it should, it may not protect the occupant in a crash. ***No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt.*** Anyone using a seat belt that is not working properly can be seriously injured or killed. Have your Honda dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page [42](#) for additional information about your seat belt system and how to take care of your belts.



## 6. Adjust the Steering Wheel



Adjust the steering wheel, if needed, so that the wheel points toward your chest, not toward your face.

Pointing the steering wheel toward your chest provides optimal protection from the airbag.

See page [69](#) for how to adjust the steering wheel.

## 7. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the car is parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured by striking interior parts of the car, or by being struck by an inflating front airbag. Being struck by an inflating side airbag can result in possibly serious injuries.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Remember, to get the best protection from your car's airbags and other safety features, you must sit properly and wear your seat belt properly.

### Advice for Pregnant Women



Because protecting the mother is the best way to protect her unborn child, a pregnant woman should always wear a seat belt whenever she drives or rides in a vehicle.

Remember to keep the lap portion of the belt as low as possible across your hips.

Pregnant women should also sit upright and as far back as possible from the steering wheel or dashboard. This will reduce the risk of injuries to both the mother and her unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating airbag.

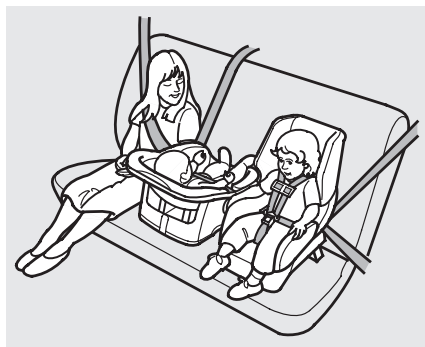
Each time you have a check-up, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

## Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Two people should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on seat belts.*** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can severely compromise the protective capability of the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

- ***Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.*** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.
- ***Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.*** Any object attached to or placed on the covers marked “SRS AIRBAG” in the center of the steering wheel and on top of the dashboard could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags. Or, if the airbags inflate, the objects could be propelled inside the car and hurt someone.

- ***On models with side airbags, do not attach hard objects on or near a front door.*** If a side airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the car and hurt someone.
- ***Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.*** If your hands or arms are close to the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel or on top of the dashboard, they could be injured if the front airbags inflate.



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many parents and other adults may not know how to *properly* protect young passengers.

So if you have children, or if you ever need to drive with a grandchild or other children in your car, be sure to read this section.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt.

**All Children Must Be Restrained**  
Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state and Canadian province requires that infants and children be restrained whenever they ride in a vehicle.

*Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat.* (See page [26](#).)

*A larger child should always be restrained with a seat belt.* (See page [36](#).)

CONTINUED

## *Additional Precautions to Parents*

- ***Never hold an infant or child on your lap.*** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward into the dashboard and crush the child.

If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms during a crash. For example, if your car crashes into a parked vehicle at 30 mph (48 km/h), a 20-lb (9 kg) infant will become a 600-lb (275 kg) force, and you will not be able to hold on.

- ***Never put a seat belt over yourself and an infant or child.*** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause very serious injuries.

## **Children Should Sit in the Back Seat**

According to accident statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in the back seat, not the front seat. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in the back seat.

In the back seat, children are less likely to be injured by striking hard interior parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating airbag when they ride in the back.

**The Passenger's Front Airbag Poses Serious Risks to Children**  
Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it inflates with tremendous speed.

## ***Infants***

***Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag.*** If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

## ***Small Children***

***Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous.*** If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

## ***Larger Children***

***Children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag.*** Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, properly restrained with a seat belt. (See page 36 for important information about protecting larger children.)

## ***U.S. Models***

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in the back seat, your car has warning labels on the dashboard and on the driver's and front passenger's visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

**⚠ WARNING**



DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY can occur

- Children 12 and under can be killed by the air bag
- The BACK SEAT is the SAFEST place for children
- NEVER put a rear-facing child seat in the front
- Sit as far back as possible from the air bag
- ALWAYS use SEAT BELTS and CHILD RESTRAINTS

**⚠ WARNING**

**Children Can Be KILLED or INJURED by Passenger Air Bag**

- The back seat is the safest place for children 12 and under.
- Make sure all children use seat belts or child seats.

To be removed by owner only.

## Canadian Models

To remind you of the front airbag hazards, your car has warning labels on the driver's and front passenger's visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

### CAUTION

TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:

- FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
- DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
- DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
- DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
- SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.

### PRÉCAUTION:

POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:

- POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
- N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L'ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
- NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSEYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
- NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
- LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.

## If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your car has three seating positions in the back seat where children can be properly restrained.

If you ever have to carry more than three children in your car:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear a seat belt properly (see page 36 ).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 13 ).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 18 ).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 15 ).

## If a Child Requires Close Attention

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards from the passenger's front airbag, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in the back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

## Additional Safety Precautions

- *Use childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the doors.* Using this feature will prevent children from opening the doors and accidentally falling out (see page 79 ).
- *Use the main power window switch to prevent children from opening the rear windows.* Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver (see page 91 ).

- *Do not leave children alone in your vehicle.* Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in most states and Canadian provinces, and can be very hazardous. For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. And children left alone with the key in the ignition can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

CONTINUED



- **Lock all doors and the trunk when your car is not in use.** Children who play in cars can accidentally get trapped inside the trunk. Teach your children not to play in or around cars. Know how to operate the emergency trunk opener (US models only) and decide if your children should be shown how to use this feature (see page [80](#) ).
- **Keep car keys and remote transmitters out of the reach of children.** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition, and open the trunk, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

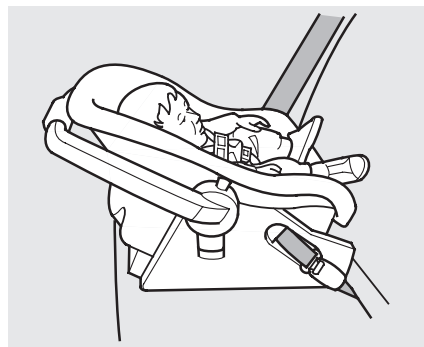
## General Guidelines for Using Child Seats

The following pages give general guidelines for selecting and installing child seats for infants and small children.

### *Selecting a Child Seat*

To provide proper protection, a child seat should meet three requirements:

1. **The child seat should meet safety standards.** The child seat should meet Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (FMVSS 213) or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (CMVSS 213). Look for the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box and seat.



2. **The child seat should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.**

**Infants:** Children up to about one year old should be restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat. Only a rear-facing seat provides the proper support to protect an infant's head, neck, and back. See page [30](#) for additional information on protecting infants.



**Small Children:** A child who is too large for a rear-facing child seat, and who can sit up without support, should be restrained in a forward-facing child seat. See page 33 for additional information on protecting small children.

### ***3. The child seat should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.***

Due to variations in the design of child seats, vehicle seats, and seat belts, all child seats will not fit all vehicle seating positions.

However, Honda is confident that one or more child seat models can fit and be properly installed in all recommended seating positions in your car.

Before purchasing a child seat, we recommend that parents test the child seat in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where they intend to use the seat. If a previously purchased child seat does not fit, you may need to buy a different one that will fit.

## Placing a Child Seat

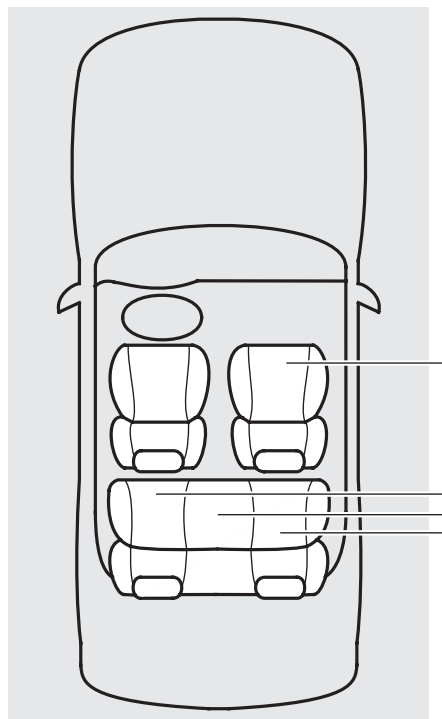
This page briefly summarizes Honda's recommendations on where to place rear-facing and forward-facing child seats in your car.

### Airbags Pose Serious Risks to Children

The passenger's front airbag inflates with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant in a rear-facing child seat.

A small child in a forward-facing child seat is also at risk. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can kill or seriously injure the child.

If a small child must ride in the front, follow the instructions provided in this section.



### Front Passenger's Seat

**Infants:** Never in the front seat, due to the front airbag hazard.

**Small children:** Not recommended, due to the front airbag hazard. If a small child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position and secure a front-facing child seat with the seat belt. (see page 33 ).

### Back Seats

**Infants:** Recommended positions. Properly secure a rear-facing child seat (see page 30 ).

**Small children:** Recommended positions. Properly secure a front-facing child seat (see page 33 ).

## ***Installing a Child Seat***

After selecting a proper child seat, and a good position to install the seat, there are three main steps in installing the seat:

***1. Properly secure the child seat to the car.*** All child seats are designed to be secured to the car with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. Some child seats can be secured to the vehicle's LATCH anchorage system instead. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the car can be endangered in a crash. See pages [31](#), [34](#), and [40](#) for instructions on how to properly secure child seats in this car.

***2. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured.*** After installing a child seat, push and pull the seat forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure.

To provide security during normal driving maneuvers as well as during a collision, we recommend that parents secure a child seat as firmly as possible.

However, a child seat does not need to be “rock solid.” In some vehicles or seating positions, it may be difficult to install a child seat so that it does not move at all. Some side-to-side or back-and-forth movement can be expected and should not reduce the child seat's effectiveness.

If the child seat is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child seat that can be firmly secured in the desired seating position.

***3. Secure the child in the child seat.*** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child seat according to the child seat maker's instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child seat can be thrown out of the seat in a crash and be seriously injured.

## ***Storing a Child Seat***

When you are not using a child seat, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child seat can be thrown around the car during a crash or sudden stop and injure someone.

## Protecting Infants



### *Child Seat Type*

Only a rear-facing child seat provides proper support for a baby's head, neck, and back. Infants up to about one year of age must be restrained in a rear-facing child seat.

Two types of seats may be used: a seat designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible seat used in the rear-facing, reclining mode.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the back seat, not the front.

We recommend that an infant be restrained in a rear-facing child seat until the infant reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit and is able to sit up without support.

### *Rear-Facing Child Seat Placement*

In this car, a rear-facing child seat can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front seat.

### *Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.*

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant. If an infant must be closely watched, we recommend that another adult sit in the back seat with the baby.

### *Do not put a rear-facing child seat in a forward-facing position.*

If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front-seat passenger from moving the seat as far back as recommended (see page 13 ). Or it may prevent them from locking the seat-back in the desired upright position (see page 14 ).

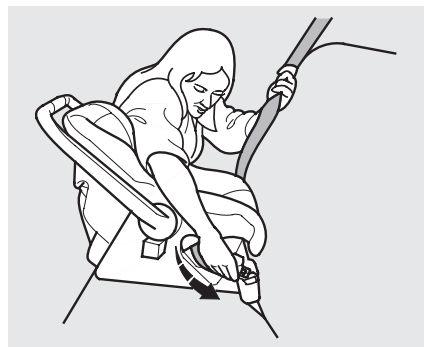
In either case, we recommend that you place the child seat directly behind the front passenger seat, move the front seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or you may wish to get a smaller child seat that allows you to safely carry a front passenger.

## ***Rear-Facing Child Seat Installation***

The lap/shoulder belts in the back seats have a locking mechanism that must be activated to secure a child seat.

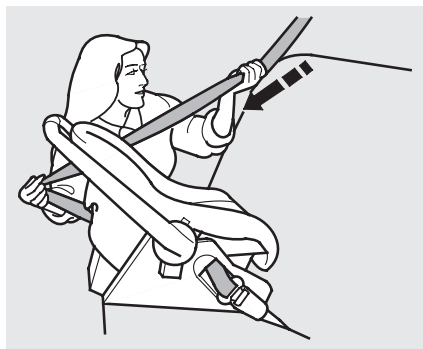
The following pages provide instructions and tips on how to secure a rear-facing child seat with this type of seat belt.

If you have a child seat designed to attach to the vehicle's LATCH anchorage system, follow the instructions on page 40 .

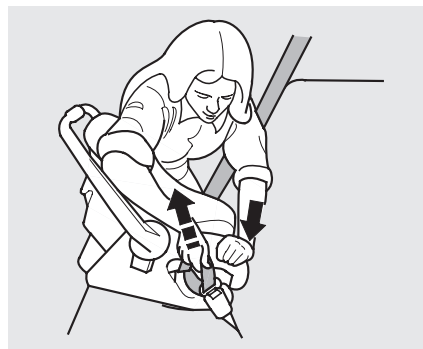


1. With the child seat in the desired back seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.

*CONTINUED*



2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor (you might hear a clicking noise as the belt retracts).
3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked and you will need to repeat these steps.



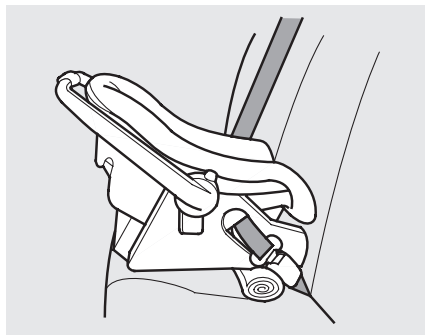
4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure. To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat, while pulling up on the belt.



5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

To deactivate the locking mechanism and remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unroute the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

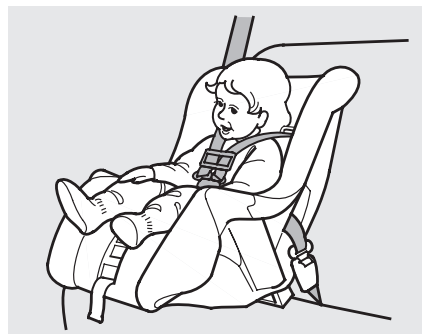
## ***Rear-Facing Child Seat Installation Tips***



For proper protection, an infant must ride in a reclined, or semi-reclined position. To determine the proper reclining angle, check with the baby's doctor or follow the seat maker's recommendations.

To achieve the desired reclining angle, it may help to put a rolled up towel under the toe of the child seat, as shown.

## **Protecting Small Children**



### ***Child Seat Type***

A child who can sit up without support, and who fits within the child seat maker's weight and height limits, should be restrained in a forward-facing, upright child seat.

Of the different seats available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child stay in the child seat as long as possible, until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the seat.

### ***Child Seat Placement***

In this car, the best place to install a forward-facing child seat is in one of the seating positions in the back seat.

***Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous.*** If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries. If a small child must be closely watched, we recommend that another adult sit in the back seat with the child.

*CONTINUED*



## **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and properly restrain the child.

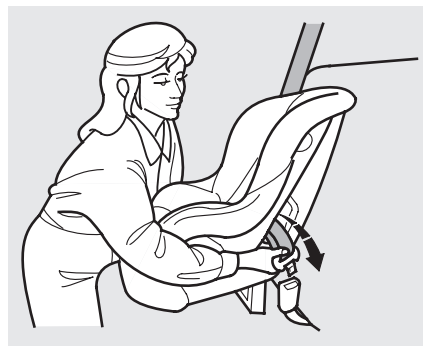
If it is necessary to put a forward-facing child seat in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, be sure the child seat is firmly secured to the car, and the child is properly strapped in the seat.

## ***Child Seat Installation***

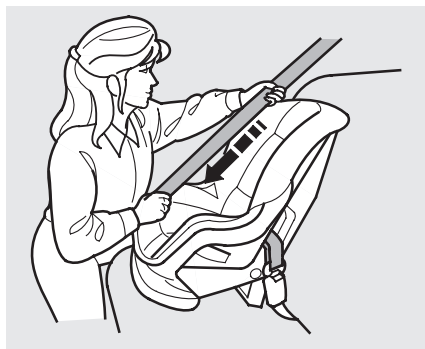
The lap/shoulder belts in the back and front passenger seating positions have a locking mechanism that must be activated to secure a child seat.

The following pages provide instructions on how to secure a forward-facing child seat with this type of seat belt.

If you have a child seat designed to attach to the vehicle's LATCH anchorage system, follow the instructions on page [40](#).



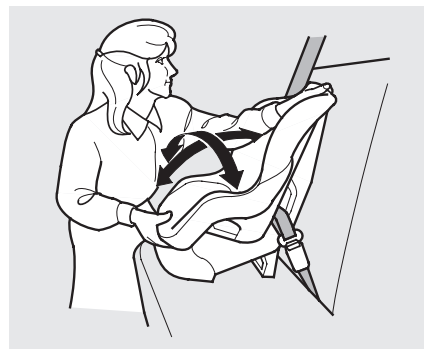
1. With the child seat in the desired seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.



2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor (you might hear a clicking noise as the belt retracts).
3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked and you will need to repeat these steps.



4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure. It may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat, while pulling up on the belt.



5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.
- To deactivate the locking mechanism in order to remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unroute the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

## Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a forward-facing child seat, the child should sit in the back seat and wear a lap/shoulder belt.

If a child is too short for the shoulder part of the belt to properly fit, we recommend that the child use a booster seat until the child is tall enough to use the seat belt without a booster.

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in the front seat.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Allowing a larger child to sit improperly in the front seat can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must sit in front, make sure the child moves the seat as far back as possible and wears the seat belt properly.

## *Checking Seat Belt Fit*



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt. Follow the instructions on page 16. Then check how the belt fits.

If the shoulder part of the belt rests over the child's collarbone and against the center of the chest, as shown, the child is large enough to wear the seat belt.

However, if the belt touches or crosses the child's neck, the child needs to use a booster seat.

***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.*** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.

***Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.*** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.

***Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.*** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt, severely compromise the protective capability of the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

***Two children should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

### *Using a Booster Seat*



If a child needs a booster seat, we recommend choosing a style that allows the child to use the lap/shoulder belt directly, without a shield, as shown.

Whichever style you select, follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

*CONTINUED*

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of the ears are even with the top of the seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster.

***When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front***  
The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

The back seat is the safest place for a child of any age or size.

In addition, the passenger's front airbag poses serious risks to children. If the seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, or the child is unrestrained or out of position, an inflating front airbag can kill or seriously injure the child.

The side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in the front, there are other important factors you should consider.

### ***Physical Size***

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit over the hips, chest, and shoulder (see pages [16](#) and [36](#)). If the seat belt does not fit properly, the child should not sit in the front.

### ***Maturity***

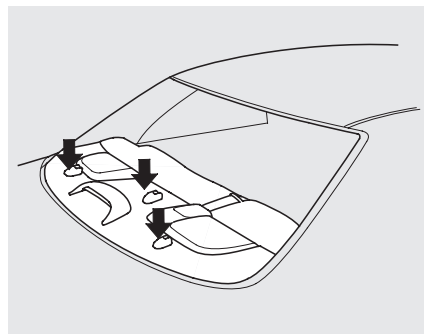
To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly positioned and secured.

- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.

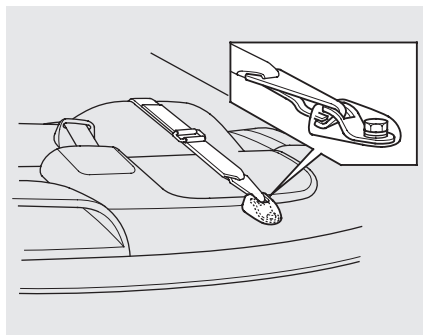
## Using Child Seats with Tethers



Your car has three tether anchorage points under the rear window for securing a tether-style child seat to the car.

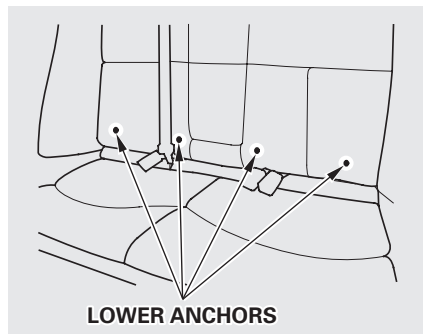
Since a tether can provide additional security, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available.

*CONTINUED*



Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchorage point and tighten the strap according to the child seat maker's instructions.

## Using LATCH

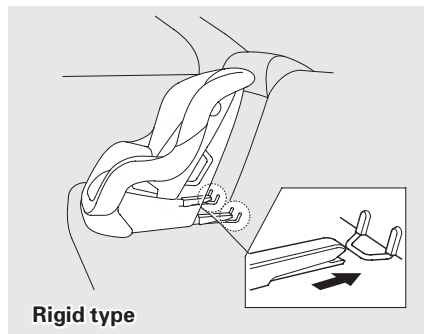


Your car is equipped with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) at the outer rear seats. The lower anchors are located between the seat-back and seat bottom and are only to be used with a child seat designed for use with LATCH.

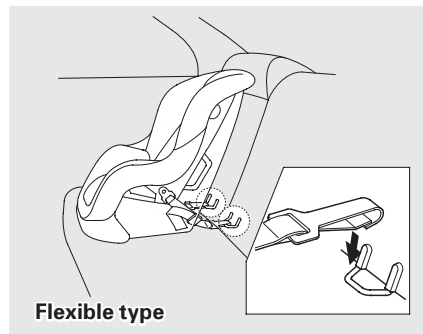
The exact location of each lower anchor is marked with a small circle above the lower anchor point.

To install a LATCH-compatible child seat:

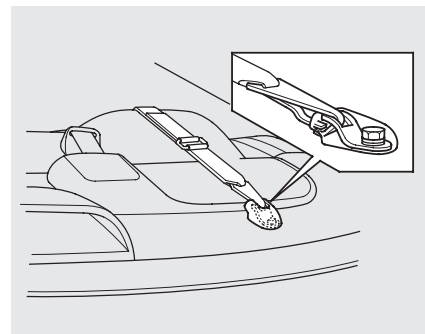
1. Move the seat belt buckle or center seat belt away from the lower anchor.
2. Make sure there are no foreign objects around the anchors. Foreign objects could get in the way of a secure connection between the child seat and the anchors.



3. Put the child seat in the rear left or right vehicle seat and attach the child seat to the lower anchorages according to the child seat maker's instructions.



4. Follow the child seat maker's instructions for any additional advice on adjusting or tightening the fit.



5. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchorage point and tighten the strap according to the child seat maker's instructions.
6. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers.



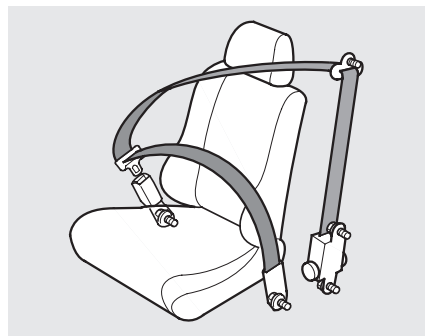
## Seat Belt System Components

Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all five seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.



The seat belt system also includes a light on the instrument panel to remind you and your passengers to fasten your belts. If the driver's seat belt is not fastened before the ignition is turned ON (II), the light will come on and a beeper will also sound. The beeper will stop after a few seconds, but the light will stay on until the driver's seat belt is fastened.

## Lap/Shoulder Belt



This seat belt has a single belt that goes over your shoulder, across your chest and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched.

To unlock the belt, push the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body to the door pillar. After exiting the car, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

The seat belts in all seating positions except the driver's have an additional locking mechanism that must be activated to secure a child seat. (See pages [31](#) and [34](#) for instructions on how to secure child seats with this type of seat belt.)

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the locking mechanism will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

To deactivate the locking mechanism, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the belt, pull it out only as far as needed.

See page 15 for instructions on how to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly.

### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in place.

The tensioners are designed to activate primarily in frontal collisions. The tensioners are independent of the airbag system, so they can be activated during a collision that

might not cause the airbags to deploy. In this case, the airbags would not be needed but the additional seat belt tension can be helpful.

The tensioners will be activated in a collision severe enough to cause the front airbags to inflate.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled in the normal way.

**SRS**

The SRS indicator light will come on if there is a problem with your automatic seat belt tensioners (see page 47 ).

### Seat Belt Maintenance

For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and that the lap/shoulder belts retract easily. Any belt not in good condition or not working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

### *U.S. Models*

Honda provides a lifetime warranty on seat belts. Honda will repair or replace any seat belt component that fails to function properly during normal use. Please see your *Honda Warranty Information* booklet for details.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by the dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed.

Automatic seat belt tensioners that deployed during a crash must be replaced.

For information on how to clean your seat belts, see page [307](#) .

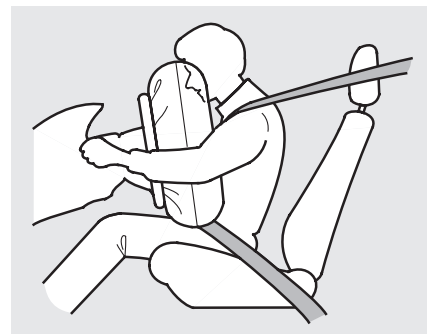
### SRS Components

Your Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) includes:

- Two front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG."
- Automatic seat belt tensioners that tighten the front seat belts during a moderate to severe frontal collision.
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe frontal collision.

- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, and driver and passenger seat belt use when the ignition is ON (II).
- An indicator light on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with the system (see page 47 ).
- Emergency backup power in case your car's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.

### How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, the sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will instantly inflate the front airbags.

*CONTINUED*

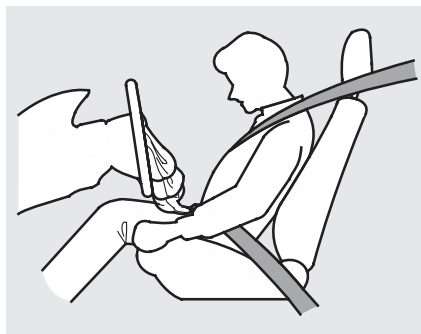
## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

During a frontal crash, your seat belts help restrain your lower body and torso. Your airbag provides a cushion to help restrain and protect your head and chest.

Since both airbags use the same sensors, both airbags normally inflate at the same time. However, it is possible for only one airbag to inflate.

This can occur when the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.



After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is approximately one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

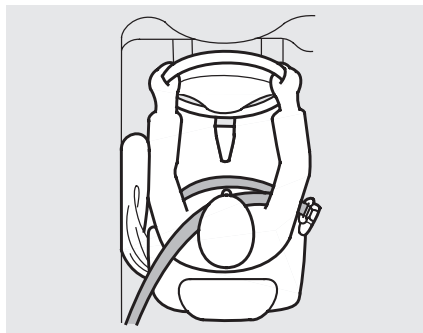
### U.S. Owners:

For additional information on how your airbags work, see the booklet titled *SRS: What You Need to Know About Airbags* that came with your owner's manual.

### Canadian Owners:

For additional information on how your airbags work, ask your dealer for a copy of the booklet titled *SRS: What You Need to Know About Airbags*.

### How Your Side Airbags Work



Some models are equipped with side airbags for the driver and a front seat passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the front seat-backs, and both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG."

If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, the sensors will detect rapid deceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag.

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

### How the SRS Indicator Light Works

**SRS** The purpose of the SRS indicator light is to alert you to a potential problem with your front airbags. On cars with side airbags, this light will also alert you to a potential problem with your automatic seat belt tensioners (page 43); or your side airbags or passenger's side airbag automatic cutoff system (page 48).

When you turn the ignition ON (II), this indicator will light briefly then go out. This tells you that the system is working properly.

*CONTINUED*

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

If the light comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator light does not come on after you turn the ignition ON (II).
- If the light stays on after the engine starts.
- If the light comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

If you see any of these indications, your front or side airbags may not deploy, your passenger's side airbag automatic cutoff system may not work properly, or your seat belt tensioners may not work when you need them. See your Honda dealer as soon as possible.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator light can result in serious injury or death if the airbags, cutoff system, or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS light alerts you to a potential problem.

### **How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Light Works**



This light alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been automatically shut off.

To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating side airbag, your car has an automatic cutoff system for the passenger's side airbag.

Although Honda does not encourage children to ride in the front, this system is designed to shut off the side airbag if a child leans sideways and the child's head is in the side airbag deployment path.

If a small-statured adult leans sideways, or larger adult slouches and leans sideways into the deployment path of the side airbag, the system may also shut off the side airbag.

If the side airbag indicator light comes on, you should have the passenger sit upright. Once the passenger is out of the deployment path of the side airbag, the system will turn the airbag back on and the light will go out.

A front seat passenger should not use a cushion or other object as a backrest. It may prevent the cutoff system from working properly.

When you turn the ignition ON (II), the indicator should light briefly and go out (see page 57 ). If it doesn't light, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, have the system checked.



## Airbag Service

Your front and side airbag systems (if equipped) are virtually maintenance-free, and there are no parts you can safely service.

However, you must have your car serviced if:

- ***Your airbags ever inflate.*** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit, automatic seat belt tensioners, and other related parts. Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by a Honda dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.
- ***The SRS indicator light alerts you to a problem.*** Take your car to an authorized Honda dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, the airbags might not inflate when you need them.

## Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.*** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
- ***Do not tamper with airbag components or wiring for any reason.*** Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.
- ***Do not expose the front seat-backs to water.*** If rain or spilled water soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag system from working properly.

- ***Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting a Honda dealer.*** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a collision.

See page [203](#) for further information and precautions relating to your airbags.

Your car's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. You should have no problem with carbon monoxide entering the car in normal driving if you maintain your car properly. Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The car is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The car was in an accident that may have damaged the underside.

## **⚠ WARNING**



Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the trunk lid open, air flow can pull exhaust gas into your car's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk lid open, open all the windows and set the heating and cooling system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked car, even in an unconfined area, with the engine running, adjust the heating and cooling system as follows:

1. Push the  button.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Turn the fan on high speed.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

# Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact your Honda dealer for a replacement.

## DASH BOARD

*U.S. models only*

**⚠ WARNING**

**Children Can Be KILLED or INJURED by Passenger Air Bag**

- The back seat is the safest place for children 12 and under.
- Make sure all children use seat belts or child seats.

To be removed by owner only.

## HOOD

**⚠ WARNING**

**Accidental deployment can seriously hurt or kill you. Follow Service Manual instructions carefully.**

**⚠ ATTENTION**

Un déploiement accidentel risque de causer de graves blessures, voire la mort.  
Suivre attentivement les instructions du manuel de réparation.

## SUN VISOR

*U.S. models*

**⚠ WARNING**



**DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY can occur**

- Children 12 and under can be killed by the air bag
- The BACK SEAT is the SAFEST place for children
- NEVER put a rear-facing child seat in the front
- Sit as far back as possible from the air bag
- ALWAYS use SEAT BELTS and CHILD RESTRAINTS

*Canadian models*

**CAUTION**  
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:

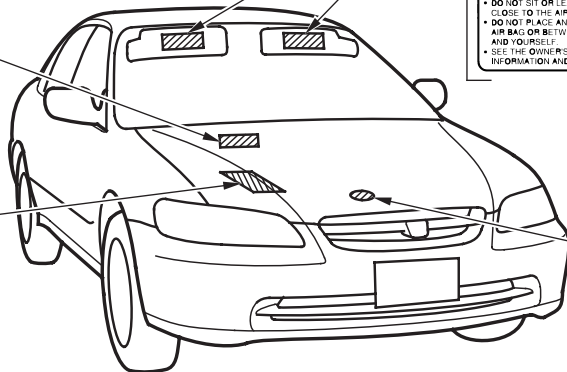
- FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT
- DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
- DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
- DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.

SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.

**PRÉCAUTION:**  
POUR ÉVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:

- POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SÉCURITÉ.
- N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIÈGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE À L'ARRIÈRE SUR LE SIÈGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
- NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSEYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
- NE DÉPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.

USEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.



## RADIATOR CAP

**DANGER**  
**WARNING**  
**危険**

- ▶ NEVER OPEN HOT. NE PAS OUVRIER HOT/SCALD PRO.
- ▶ NEVER OPEN HOT/SCALD PRO. NE PAS OUVRIER PAS QU'ILS CHAUD.
- ▶ NICHT BEI HEISSEN MOTOR OFFEN. 熱い時あけしないで下さい。
- ▶ 高温時、満勿打开。

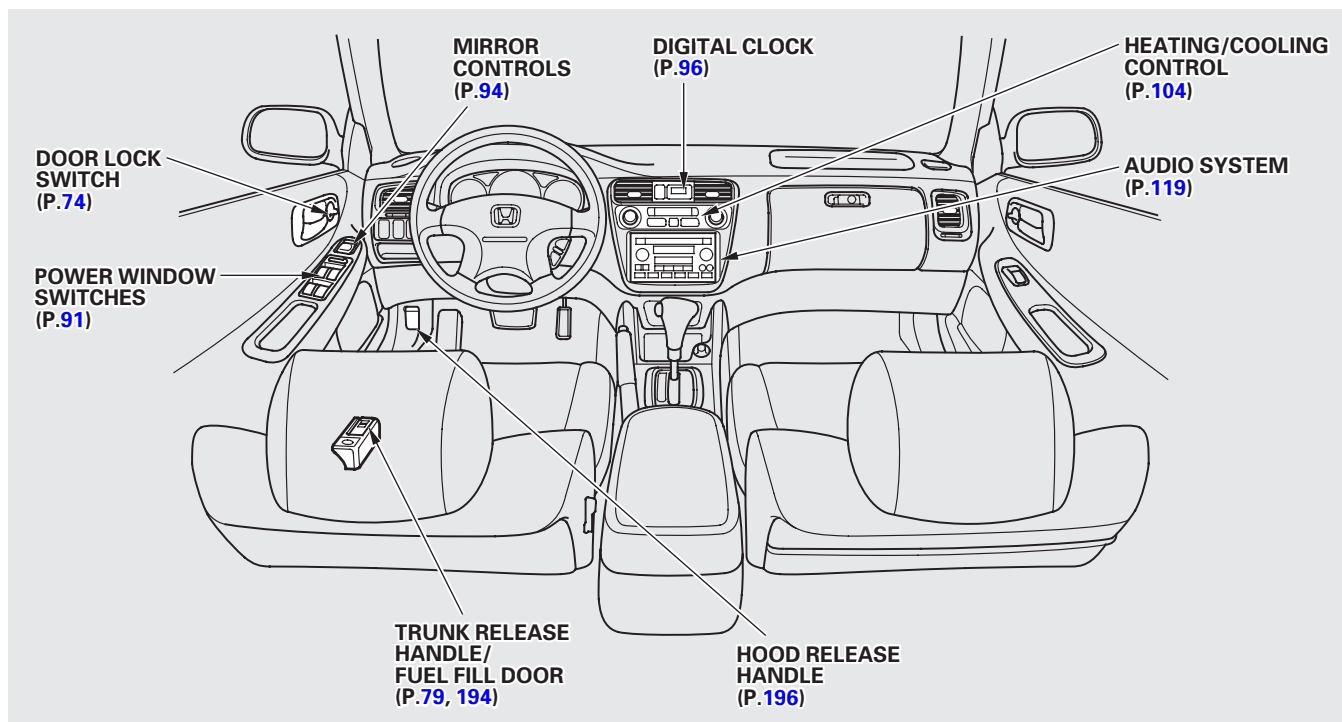
**1.1**

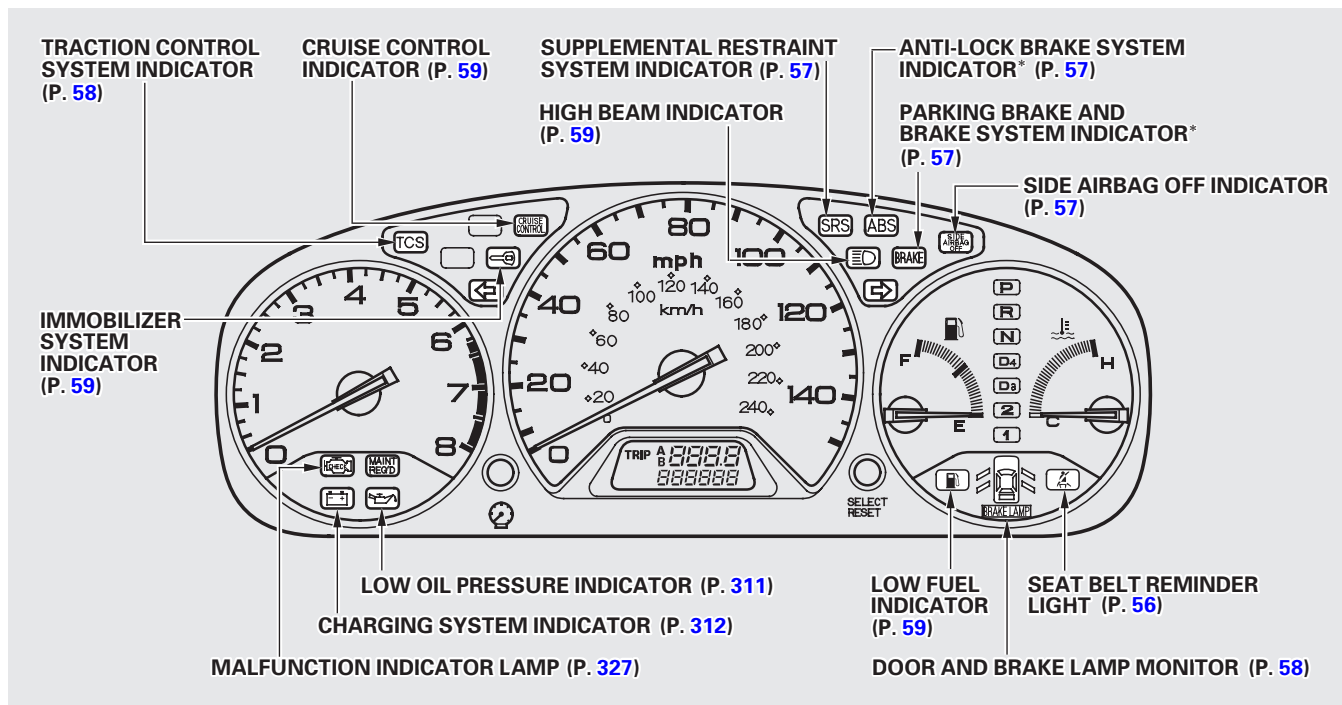
This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your Honda. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations .....	54
Indicator Lights.....	55
Gauges .....	60
Speedometer .....	60
Tachometer .....	60
Odometer .....	60
Trip Meter .....	61
Temperature Gauge .....	61
Fuel Gauge .....	61
Maintenance Required	
Indicator .....	62
Controls Near the Steering	
Wheel .....	63
Headlights .....	64

Automatic Lighting Off	
Feature.....	65
Daytime Running Lights.....	65
Instrument Panel Brightness.....	65
Turn Signals .....	66
Windshield Wipers .....	66
Windshield Washers .....	68
Hazard Warning.....	68
Rear Window Defogger .....	68
Steering Wheel Adjustment .....	69
Keys and Locks.....	70
Keys.....	70
Immobilizer System.....	71
Ignition Switch .....	72
Door Locks .....	73
Power Door Locks .....	74
Remote Transmitter .....	75
Childproof Door Locks .....	79
Trunk .....	79
Emergency Trunk Opener .....	80
Glove Box .....	81
Seat Adjustments.....	82
Front Seat Adjustments .....	82
Driver's Seat Manual Height	
Adjustment .....	83

Driver's Seat Power Height	
Adjustment .....	83
Driver's Seat Full Power	
Adjustments .....	84
Driver's Lumbar Support.....	85
Front Passenger's Seat	
Adjustments .....	86
Head Restraints .....	86
Folding Rear Seat .....	87
Rear Seat Armrest .....	88
Seat Heaters .....	90
Power Windows .....	91
Moonroof .....	92
Mirrors .....	93
Adjusting the Power Mirrors .....	94
Parking Brake .....	95
Digital Clock.....	96
Console Compartment .....	97
Coin Box .....	97
Beverage Holder .....	98
Sun Visor.....	99
Vanity Mirror .....	99
Sunglasses Holder .....	100
Accessory Power Socket .....	100
Interior Lights .....	101





\* The U.S. instrument panel is shown. Differences for the Canadian models are noted in the text.

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your car.



## Seat Belt Reminder Light

This indicator lights when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). It is a reminder to you and your passengers to protect yourselves by fastening the seat belts. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

If you do not fasten your seat belt, the beeper will stop after a few seconds but the light stays on until you do. Both the light and the beeper stay off if you fasten your seat belt before turning on the ignition.



## Low Oil Pressure Indicator

The engine can be severely damaged if this light flashes or stays on when the engine is running. For complete information, see page [325](#).



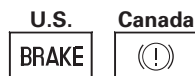
## Charging System Indicator

If this light comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged. For complete information, see page [326](#).



## Malfunction Indicator Lamp

See page [327](#).



### Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This light has two functions:

1. This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). It is a reminder to check the parking brake. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the brakes and tires.
2. If the indicator remains lit after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, it can indicate a problem in the brake system. For complete information, see page [329](#).

### SRS Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator lights when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This light will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags or passenger's side airbag automatic cutoff system. For complete information, see page [47](#).

### SIDE AIRBAG OFF Side Airbag Cut-off Indicator

*Only on models equipped with side airbags*

This indicator lights when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that the passenger's side airbag has automatically shut off. For complete information, see page [48](#).



### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

*Only on models equipped with ABS (see page [220](#))*

This light normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch ON (II), and when the ignition switch is turned to START (III). If this light comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the ABS. If this happens, take the car to your dealer to have it checked. With the light on, your car still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock. For complete information, see page [221](#).



## **TCS** Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator

*On all V6 models*

This indicator has three functions:

1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the Traction Control System.
2. It flashes when the TCS is regulating wheelspin.
3. If it comes on and stays on when the Traction Control System is on, it indicates that there is a problem in the TCS.

This light also comes on when you turn the ignition ON (II) and goes off after the engine starts. See page [222](#) for more information on the TCS.

## Door and Brake Lamp Monitor



The appropriate light comes on in this display if the trunk or any door is not closed tightly. If a brake light does not work, the **BRAKE LAMP** indicator comes on when you push the brake pedal with the ignition switch ON (II).

A burned out brake light is a hazard when drivers behind you cannot tell you are braking. Have your brake lights repaired right away.

All the lights in the monitor display come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch ON (II).



## Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal light blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If the light does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see page [293](#)). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signalling.

When you turn on the Hazard Warning switch, both turn signal lights blink. All turn signals on the outside of the car should flash.

**DRL****“Daytime Running Lights” Indicator***Canadian models only*

This indicator lights when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II) with the headlight switch off and the parking brake set. It should go off if you turn on the headlights or release the parking brake. If it comes on at any other time, it means there is a problem with the DRL. There may also be a problem with the high beam headlights.

**High Beam Indicator**

This light comes on with the high beam headlights. See page 64 for information on the headlight controls.

On Canadian models, this indicator comes on with reduced brightness when the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) are on (see page 65).

**Cruise Control Indicator***Only on models equipped with Cruise Control System*

This lights when you set the cruise control. See page 185 for information on operating the cruise control.

**Low Fuel Indicator**

This light comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon.

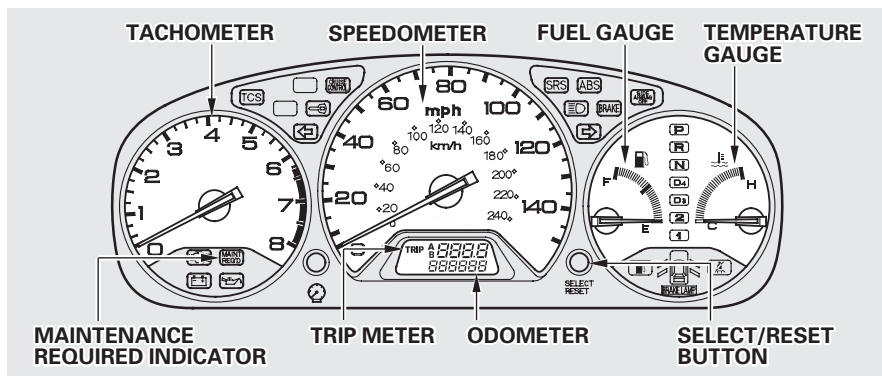
**Immobilizer System Indicator**

This indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). It will then go off if you have inserted a properly-coded ignition key. If it is not a properly-coded key, the indicator will blink and the engine will not start (see page 71).

This indicator also blinks several times when you turn the ignition switch from ON (II) to ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0).

**Washer Level Indicator***Canadian models only*

This light comes on when the washer fluid level is low. Add washer fluid when you see this light come on (see page 262).



## Speedometer

### *U.S. Models*

This shows your speed in miles per hour (mph). The smaller inner numbers are the speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

### *Canadian Models*

This shows your speed in kilometers per hour (km/h). The smaller inner numbers are the speed in miles per hour (mph).

## Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). To protect the engine from damage, never drive with the tachometer needle in the red zone.

## Odometer

The odometer shows the total distance your car has been driven. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models. It is illegal under U.S. federal law and Canadian provincial regulations to disconnect, reset, or alter the odometer with the intent to change the number of miles or kilometers indicated.

### Trip Meter

This meter shows the number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since you last reset it.

There are two trip meters: Trip A and Trip B. Switch between these displays by pressing the Select/Reset button repeatedly. Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

To reset a trip meter, display it and then press and hold the Select/Reset button until the number resets to “0.0”. Both trip meters will reset if the vehicle’s battery goes dead or is disconnected.

### Temperature Gauge

This shows the temperature of the engine’s coolant. During normal operation, the pointer should rise from the bottom white mark to about the middle of the gauge. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, the pointer may rise to near the upper grey zone. If it reaches the red (Hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. Turn to page [325](#) for instructions and precautions on checking the engine’s cooling system.

### Fuel Gauge

This shows how much fuel you have. It is most accurate when the car is on level ground. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount when you are driving on curvy or hilly roads.

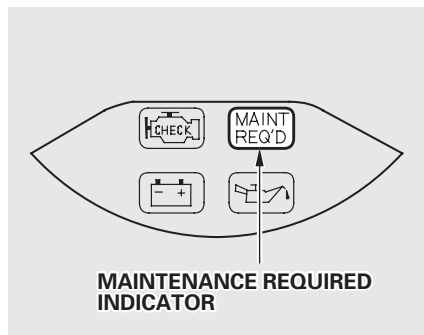
#### *4-cylinder models*

The gauge stays at the same fuel level reading after you turn off the ignition. When you add fuel, the gauge slowly changes to the new reading after you turn the ignition switch back ON (II).

#### *6-cylinder models*

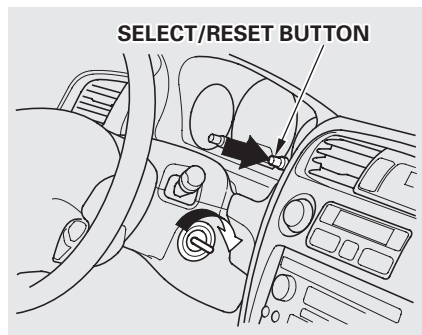
The needle returns to the bottom after you turn off the ignition. The gauge shows the fuel level reading immediately after you turn the ignition switch back ON (II).

## Maintenance Required Indicator



This indicator reminds you that it is time to take your car in for scheduled maintenance. Refer to the Maintenance Schedules for Normal and Severe Driving Conditions on pages 240 – 244.

For the first 6,000 miles (9,600 km) after the Maintenance Required Indicator is reset, it will come on for two seconds when you turn the ignition switch ON (II).



Between 6,000 miles (9,600 km) and 7,500 miles (12,000 km) this indicator will light for two seconds when you first turn the ignition switch ON (II), and then flash for ten seconds.

If you exceed 7,500 miles (12,000 km) without having the scheduled maintenance performed, this indicator will remain on as a constant reminder.

Your dealer will reset this indicator after completing the scheduled maintenance. If this maintenance is done by someone other than your Honda dealer, reset the indicator as follows.

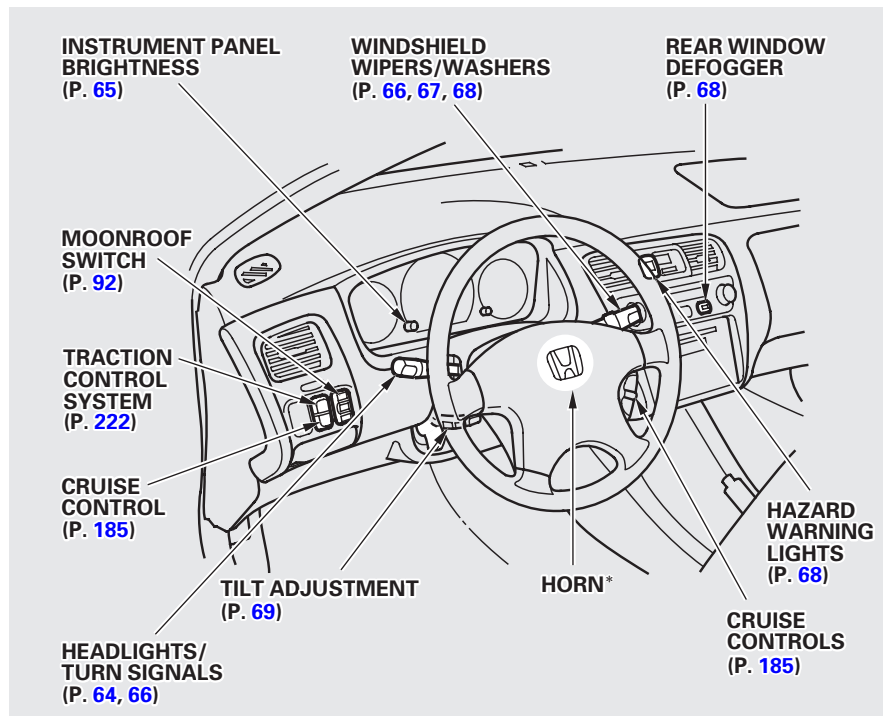
1. Turn off the engine.
2. Press and hold the select/reset button in the instrument panel, then turn the ignition switch ON (II).
3. Hold the buttons for approximately ten seconds until the indicator resets.

The two levers on the steering column contain controls for driving features you use most often. The left lever controls the turn signals, headlights, and high beams. The right lever controls the windshield washers and wipers.

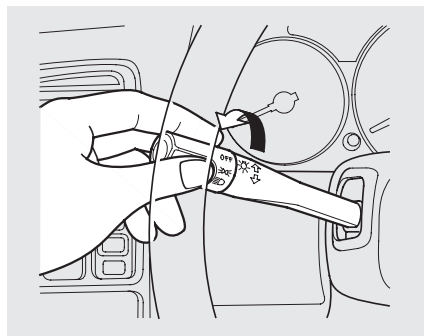
The controls under the left air vent are for the moonroof and the cruise control.


The tilt adjustment lever on the underside of the steering column allows you to tilt the steering wheel.

\* To use the horn, press the pad around the “H” logo.

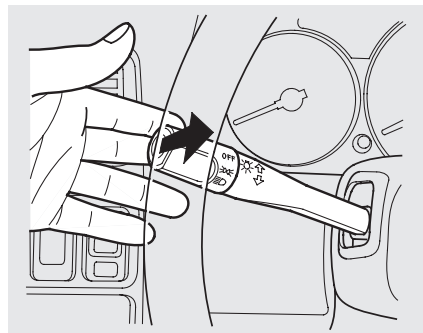


## Headlights



The rotating switch on the left lever controls the lights. Turning this switch to the “” position turns on the parking lights, taillights, instrument panel lights, side-marker lights, and rear license plate lights. Turning the switch to the “” position turns on the headlights.

If you leave the lights on with the ignition switch in ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0), you will hear a reminder chime when you open the driver's door.



To change between low beams and high beams, pull the turn signal lever until you hear a click, then let go. The blue high beam indicator will light (see page [59](#)).



To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will come on and go off.

The high beams will stay on for as long as you hold the lever back, no matter what position the headlight switch is in.

### Automatic Lighting Off Feature

*On U.S. SE and EX models, Canada EX-L model, and all EX V-6 models*

The Automatic Lighting Off feature turns off the headlights, parking lights, taillights, side marker lights, license plate lights and instrument panel lights within 15 seconds of removing the key from the ignition switch and closing the driver's door.

This feature activates if you leave the headlight switch in the “ ” or “ ” position, remove the key, open, then close the driver's door.

If you remove the key from the ignition switch with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door and get out, the lights will turn off after ten minutes.

The lights will turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights

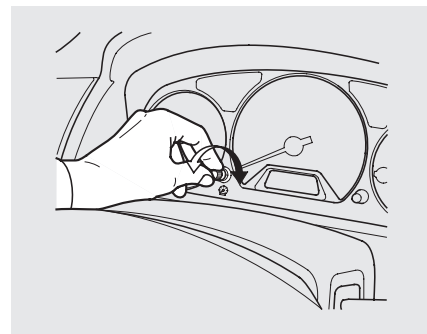
will go off. With the driver's door open, you will hear a lights-on reminder chime.

### Daytime Running Lights (Canadian Models)

With the headlight switch off, the high beam headlights come on with reduced brightness when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II) and release the parking brake. They remain on until you turn the ignition off, even if you set the parking brake.

The headlights revert to normal operation when you turn them on with the switch.

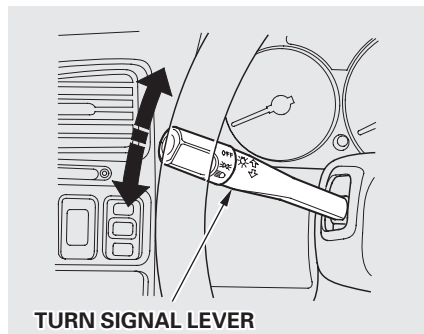
### Instrument Panel Brightness



The knob on the instrument panel controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights. Turn the knob to adjust the brightness.



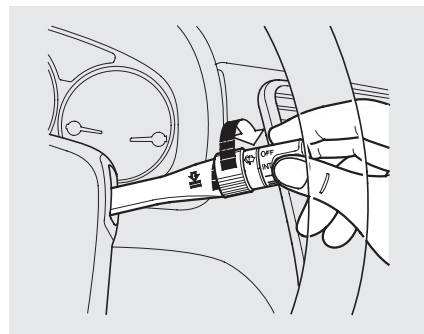
## Turn Signals



Signal a turn or lane change with this lever. Push down on the lever to signal a left turn, and up to signal a right turn. If you push it up or down all the way, the turn signal continues to blink even when you release the lever. It shuts off automatically as you complete the turn.

To signal a lane change, push lightly on the turn signal lever in the proper direction and hold it. The lever will return to the center position as soon as you release it.

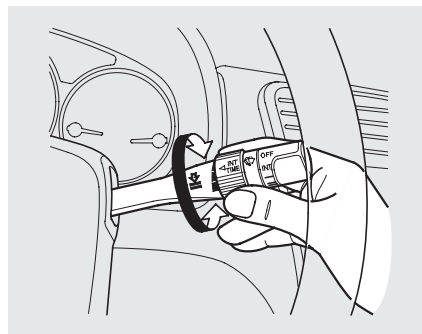
## Windshield Wipers



The right lever controls the windshield wipers and washers. The rotary switch at the end of the lever has three positions:

- INT: intermittent
- : low speed
- == : high speed

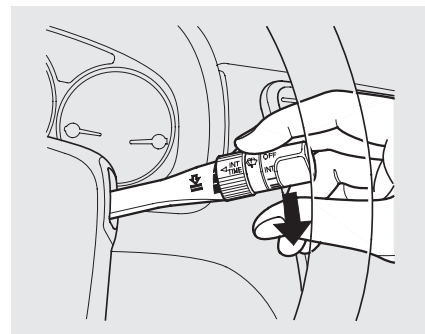
In intermittent, the wipers operate every few seconds. The sweep interval will change slightly with speed; getting shorter as you drive faster. In low speed and high speed, the wipers run continuously.



*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*

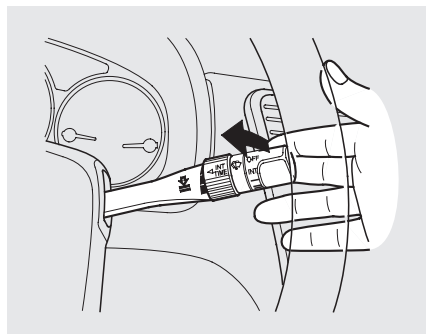
You can vary how often the wipers sweep the windshield by turning the INT TIME ring next to the rotary switch.

If you turn the INT TIME ring to the shortest delay, the wipers will change from intermittent to low speed operation when vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).



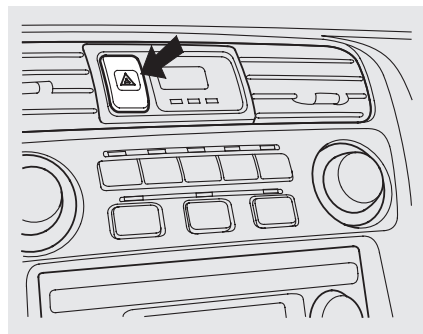
To operate the wipers in mist mode, push the control lever down. The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever. This gives you a quick way to clear the windshield.

## Windshield Washers



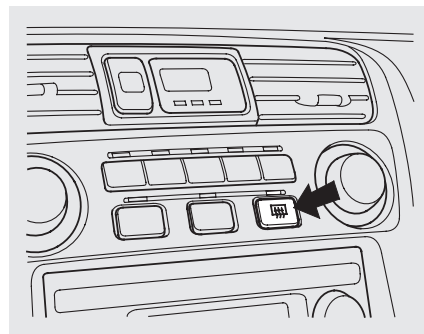
To clean the windshield, pull back on the wiper control lever. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed while you're pulling the lever, then complete one more sweep of the windshield after you release it.

## Hazard Warning



Push the button to the left of the clock to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all four outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use the hazard warning lights if you need to park in a dangerous area near heavy traffic, or if your car is disabled.

## Rear Window Defogger



The rear window defogger will clear fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the defogger button to turn it on and off. The light above the button lights to show the defogger is on. If you do not turn it off, the defogger will shut itself off after about 15 minutes. It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition. You have to turn it on again when you restart the car.

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The defogger and antenna wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side to side.

### Steering Wheel Adjustment

See page 18 for important safety information about how to properly position the steering wheel.

Make any steering wheel adjustment before you start driving.

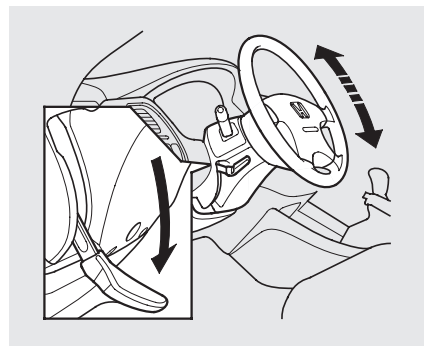
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the car and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the car is stopped.

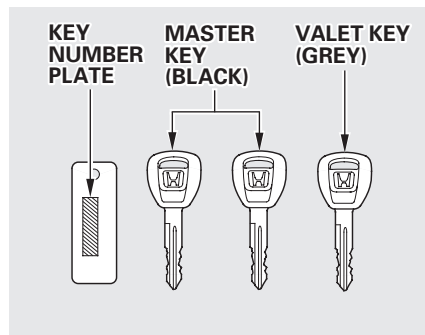
To adjust the steering wheel upward or downward:

1. Push the lever under the steering column all the way down.



2. Move the steering wheel to the desired position, making sure the wheel points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and the indicator lights.
3. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in that position.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up and down.

## Keys



Your car comes with two master keys and a valet key. The master key fits all the locks on your car:

- Ignition
- Doors
- Trunk
- Glove box
- Trunk release handle
- Trunk pass-through cover
- Rear seat trunk access

The valet key works only in the ignition and the door locks. You can keep the trunk, trunk release handle, trunk pass-through cover, rear seat trunk access and glove box locked when you leave your car and the valet key at a parking facility.

You should have received a key number plate with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Keep the plate stored in a safe place. If you need to replace a key, use only Honda-approved key blanks.

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the Immobilizer System. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.

- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

The keys do not contain batteries. Do not try to take them apart.

### *Remote Transmitter*

Some models also come with two remote transmitters; see page 75 for an explanation of their operation.

## Immobilizer System

The Immobilizer System protects your car from theft. A properly-coded master or valet key must be used in the ignition switch for the engine to start. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When you turn the ignition switch to ON (II), the Immobilizer System indicator should come on for a few seconds, then go out. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK (0), remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the switch to ON (II) again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object is near the ignition switch when you insert the key. To make sure the system recognizes the key code:

- Do not keep other immobilizer keys on the same key ring.
- Use a plastic or leather key fob, not metal.
- Keep other keys away from your vehicle's key and the ignition switch while trying to start the engine.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your Honda dealer.

This indicator will also blink several times when you turn the ignition switch from ON (II) to ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0).

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your car undriveable.

If you have lost your key and you cannot start the engine, contact your Honda dealer.

*As required by the FCC:*

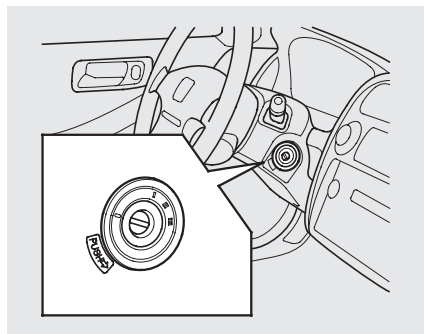
*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

*Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.*

*Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*

## Ignition Switch



The ignition switch is on the right side of the steering column. It has four positions:

- LOCK (0)
- ACCESSORY (I)
- ON (II)
- START (III)

**LOCK (0)** — You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To switch from ACCESSORY to LOCK, you must push the key in slightly as you turn it. If your car has an automatic transmission, the shift lever must also be in Park. The anti-theft lock will lock the steering column when you remove the key. If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may sometimes make it difficult to turn the key from LOCK to ACCESSORY. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or to the right as you turn the key.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

**ACCESSORY (I)** — In this position, you can operate the audio system and the accessory power socket.

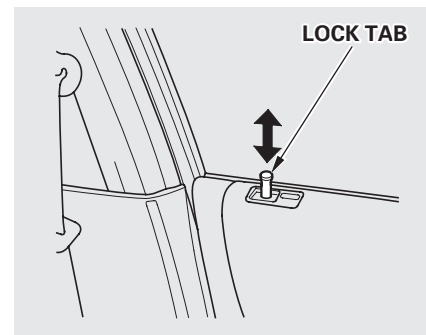
**ON (II)** — This is the normal key position when driving. All features and accessories on the car are usable. Several of the lights on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from ACCESSORY to ON.

**START (III)** — Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to ON (II) when you let go of the key.

The engine will not start if the Immobilizer System does not recognize the key's coding (see page 71 ).

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the LOCK (0) or ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver's door. Remove the key to turn off the beeper.

## Door Locks



Each door has a lock tab on the top. Push the tab down to lock the door and pull it up to unlock.

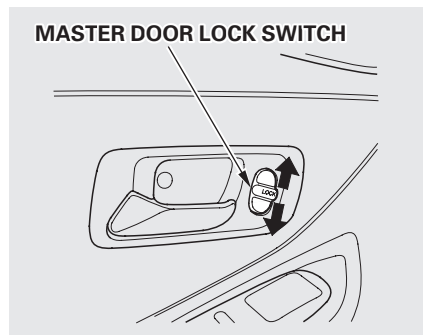
*CONTINUED*



To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the car, push the lock tab down and close the door.

The front doors can be locked and unlocked from the outside with the key.

## Power Door Locks



*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*

Each front door has a master door lock switch. Either switch locks and unlocks all doors. Push the switch down to lock all doors, and up to unlock them.

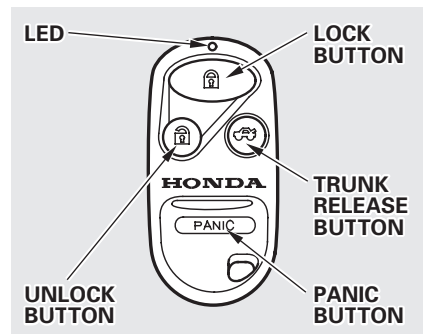
To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the car, push the lock tab in and close the door.

All doors can be locked from the outside by using the key in either front door. To unlock only the driver's door from the outside, insert the key in the driver's door lock, turn the key and release it. If you turn the key and hold it, all doors will unlock. All four doors will unlock when you unlock the passenger's door with the key.

## Lockout Prevention

If you forget and leave the key in the ignition switch, Lockout Prevention will not allow you to lock the driver's door. With the driver's door open and the key in the ignition, both master door lock switches are disabled. However, if the driver's door is not open, the master door lock switches are not disabled. Pushing the switch down on the open passenger's door will lock all doors. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pushing in the lock tab, the tabs on all doors pop out. Pushing in the lock tab on the passenger's door only locks that door.

## Remote Transmitter



*On all EX, SE, and EX V-6 models and Canada SE V-6 model*

You can lock and unlock your car with the remote transmitter. When you push the LOCK button, all doors lock. The parking lights, side marker lights, and taillights flash once.

When you push the LOCK button a second time within 5 seconds after you have locked the doors, you will hear a beep to verify that the doors are locked and the security system has set.

When you push the UNLOCK button once, only the driver's door unlocks. The remaining doors unlock when you push the button a second time. The parking lights, side marker lights, and taillights flash twice.

CONTINUED

The ceiling light (if the ceiling light switch is in the center position) will come on when you press the UNLOCK button. If you do not open any door, the light stays on for about 10 seconds, then fades out. If you relock the doors with the remote transmitter before 10 seconds have elapsed, the light will go off immediately.

You cannot lock the doors with the remote transmitter if any door is not fully closed or the key is in the ignition switch.

If you unlock the doors with the remote transmitter, but do not open any of the doors within 20 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets.

To open the trunk, push the Trunk Release button for approximately one second.

The trunk will not open if the key is in the ignition switch.

### ***Panic Mode***

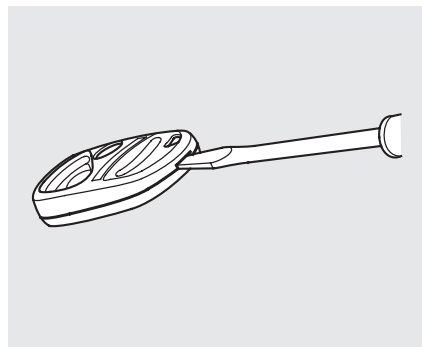
Panic mode allows you to remotely activate your car's security system to attract attention. When activated, the horn will sound, and the exterior lights will flash, for about 30 seconds. To activate panic mode, press and hold the PANIC button for about two seconds.

To cancel Panic mode before 30 seconds, press any button on the remote transmitter. You can also turn the ignition switch to ON (II).

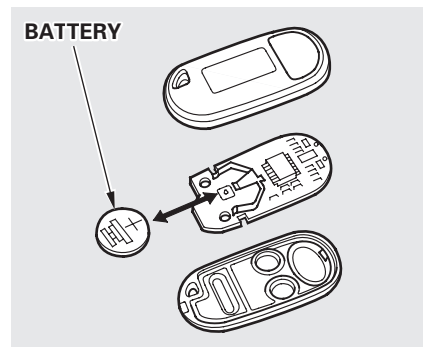
## ***Replacing the Battery***

When the remote transmitter's battery begins to get weak, it may take several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors, and the LED will not light. Replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR2025



To replace the battery, pry the two parts of the transmitter apart.



Remove the old battery and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (+ side facing up), then insert it in the transmitter.

*CONTINUED*

*As required by the FCC:*

*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

*Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.*

*Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*

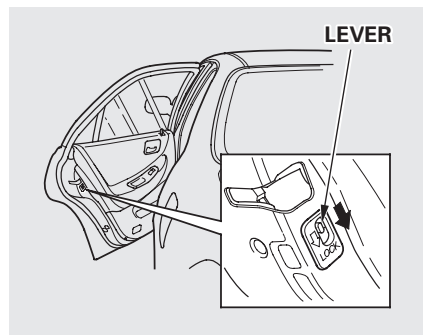
## ***Transmitter Care***

Avoid severe shock to the transmitter, such as dropping or throwing it. Also, protect it from extreme hot or cold temperatures.

Clean the transmitter case with a soft cloth. Do not use strong cleaners or solvents that could harm the case. Immersing the transmitter in any liquid will harm the transmitter and cause it to not function properly.

If you lose a transmitter, you will need to have the replacement programmed to your car's system by your Honda dealer. Any other transmitters you have will also need to be reprogrammed.

## Childproof Door Locks



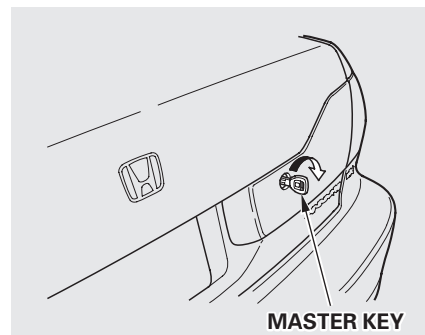
The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position, the door cannot be opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, pull the lock tab up and use the outside door handle.

## Trunk



You can open the trunk in three ways:

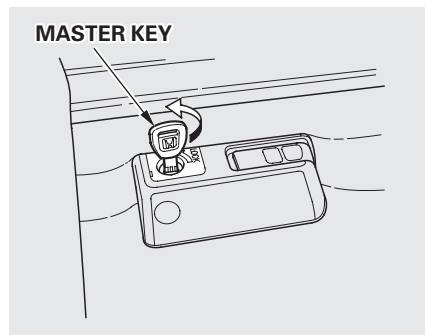
- Pull the trunk release handle to the left of the driver's seat.
- Use the master key to open the trunk lock. The valet key does not work in this lock.
- Press the trunk release button on the remote transmitter. (EX and EX V-6 models only)



To close the trunk, press down on the trunk lid.

See page [204](#) for cargo loading and weight limit information. Keep the trunk lid closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the lid, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page [51](#).

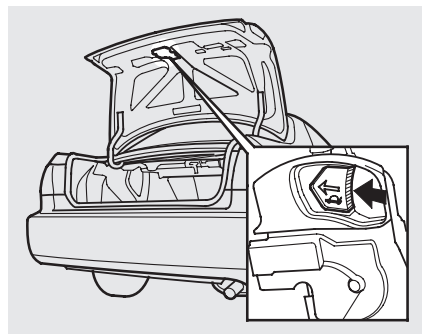
*CONTINUED*



To protect items in the trunk when you need to give the key to someone else:

1. Lock the trunk release handle with the master key. Also make sure the trunk pass-through cover is locked (see page [89](#) ).
2. Give the person the valet key.

## Emergency Trunk Opener



### *U.S. models only*

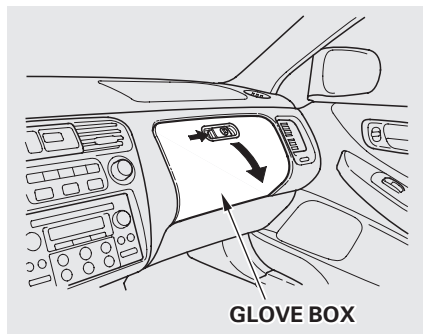
As a safety feature, your car has a release lever on the trunk latch so the trunk can be opened from the inside.

To open the trunk, push the release lever to the left.

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature.

For more information about child safety, see page [26](#) .

## Glove Box



Open the glove box by squeezing the handle. Close it with a firm push. Lock or unlock the glove box with the master key.

The glove box light comes on only when the instrument panel lights are on.

## **⚠ WARNING**

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.



All V-6 models, and the 4-cylinder EX model with leather interior have a power adjustable driver's seat.

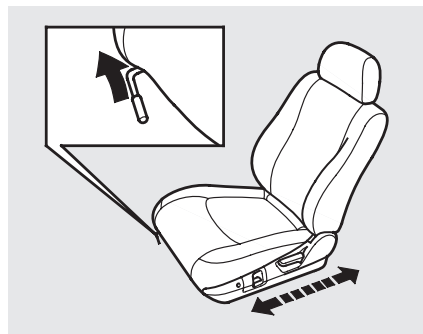
The EX V-6 model also has a power adjustable passenger's seat (See page [86](#) ).

The U.S. SE and 4-cylinder EX models without leather interior have a power seat bottom height adjustment. All other seat adjustments in these models are manual.

The DX Value Package, LX, SE and 4-cylinder models in the U.S. and the LX, SE, and EX models in Canada have manual seat adjustments (see next column).

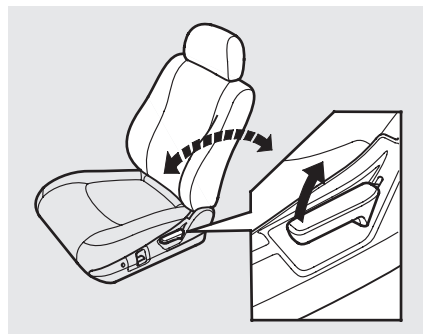
The front passenger's seat in all 4-cylinder models, the U.S. LX V-6, and the Canadian type SE V-6 models adjusts manually.

## Front Seat Adjustments



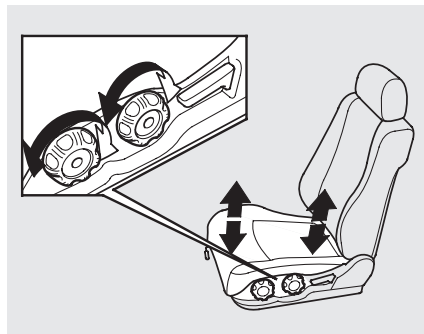
See pages [13](#) – [14](#) for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position seats and seat-backs. Adjust the seat before you start driving.

To adjust the seat forward and backward, pull up on the lever under the seat cushion's front edge. Move the seat to the desired position and release the lever. Try to move the seat to make sure it is locked in position.



To change the angle of the seat-back, pull up on the lever on the outside of the seat bottom. Move the seat-back to the desired position and release the lever. Let the seat-back latch in the new position.

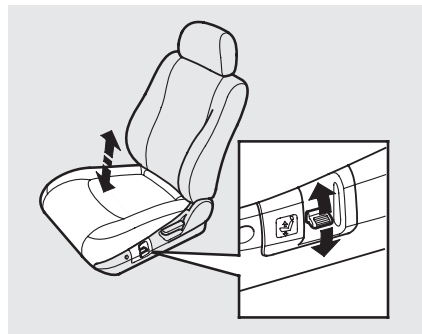
## Driver's Seat Manual Height Adjustment



### *On SE and LX models*

The height of your driver's seat is adjustable. Turn the front dial on the outside of the seat cushion to raise the front of the seat bottom and turn the rear dial to raise the rear.

## Driver's Seat Power Height Adjustment



### *On U.S. EX models without leather and U.S. SE models*

The height of your driver's seat is power adjustable. Pull up on the switch to raise the seat. Push it down to lower the seat.

Make all adjustments before you start driving.

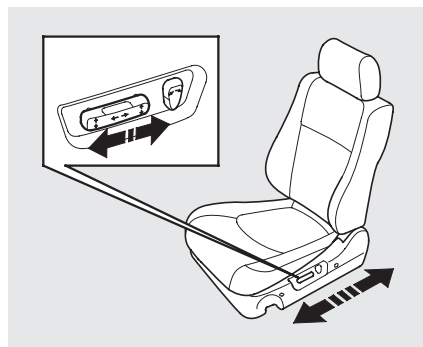
# Seat Adjustments

## Driver's Seat Full Power Adjustments

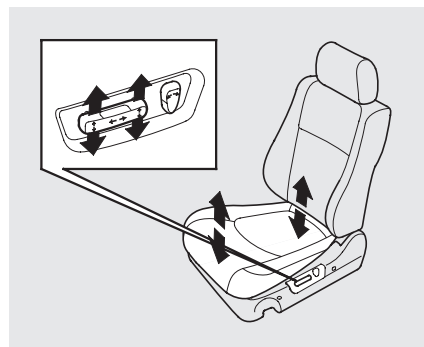
*On all V-6 models, and the 4-cylinder EX model with leather interior*  
See pages 13 – 14 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position seats and seat-backs.

The two power seat adjustment switches are on the outside edge of the seat bottom. The horizontal switch adjusts the seat bottom in several directions. The short vertical switch adjusts the seat-back angle.

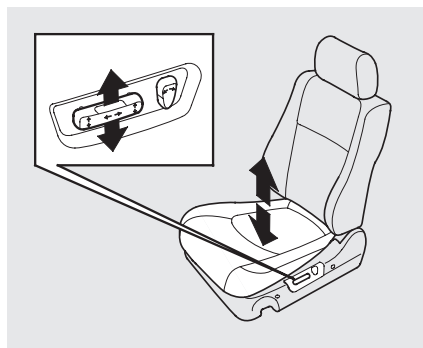
You can adjust the seat with the ignition switch in any position. Make all adjustments before you start driving.



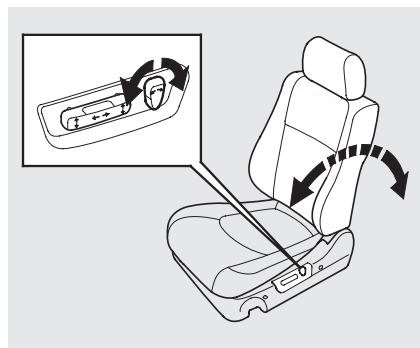
Push the horizontal switch forward or backward to move the seat forward or backward.



Pull up or push down on the front of the switch to move the seat bottom's front edge up or down. Pull up or push down on the rear of the switch to move the rear of the seat bottom up or down.



Pull the center of the horizontal switch up to raise the seat. Push it down to lower the seat.



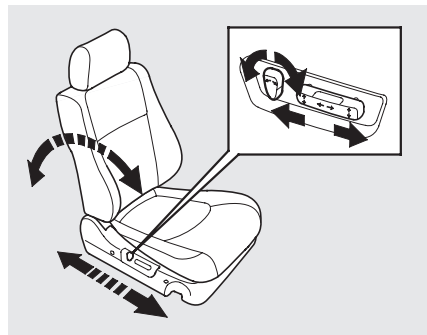
Adjust the seat-back angle by pushing the rear switch in the direction you want to move.

## Driver's Lumbar Support



*On U.S. EX and all EX V-6 models*  
Vary the lumbar support by moving the lever on the right side of the seat-back. Pivot the lever forward until it stops, then let it return. Doing this several times adjusts the lumbar support through its full range.

## Front Passenger's Seat Adjustments

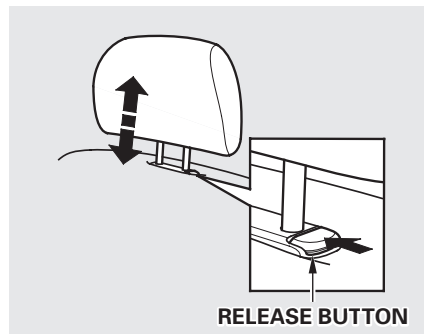


*On EX V-6 model*

The seat adjustment switches are on the outside edge of the seat bottom. Push the long horizontal switch forward or backward to move the seat bottom in that direction.

Adjust the seat-back angle by pushing the vertical switch in the direction you want to move.

## Head Restraints



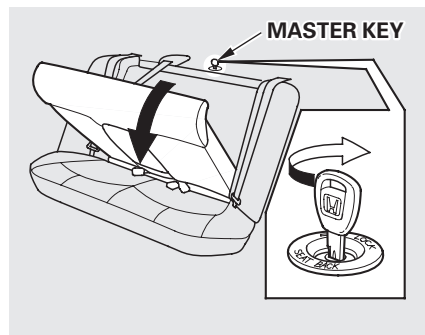
*See page 15 for important safety information and a warning about how to properly position the head restraints.*

The front head restraints help protect you and your passenger from whiplash and other injuries. They are most effective when you adjust them so the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. A taller person should adjust the restraint as high as possible.

The front head restraints adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways and push the restraint down.

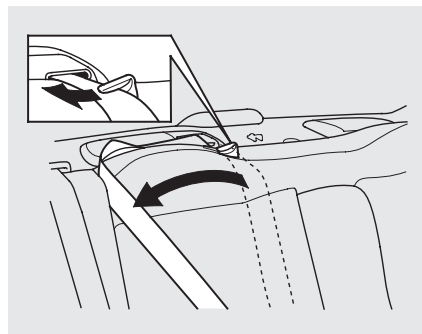
To remove a head restraint for cleaning or repair, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button and pull the restraint out of the seat-back.

## Folding Rear Seat

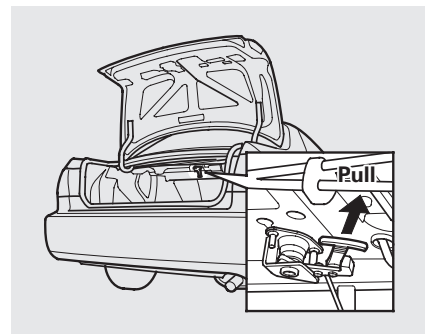


The back of the rear seat folds down, giving you direct access to the trunk. The seat-back can be released from inside the car or inside the trunk.

To fold down the seat-back from inside the car, insert the master key in the lock on the rear shelf. Turn the key clockwise, pull down the top of the seat-back, then release the key.



When storing cargo, you can move the rear center shoulder belt out of the way by removing the belt from the guide.



To release the seat-back from inside the trunk, pull the release loop under the trunk panel.

To lock the seat-back upright, push it firmly against the trunk panel. Make sure it is latched in place by pulling on the top of the seat.

*CONTINUED*

# Seat Adjustments

---

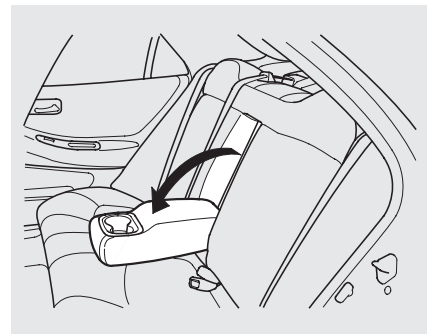
Make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the rear seat-back whenever the seat-back is in its upright position.

Make sure all items in the trunk, or items extending through the opening into the back seat, are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard. See **Carrying Cargo** on page [204](#).

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the trunk lid open. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page [51](#).

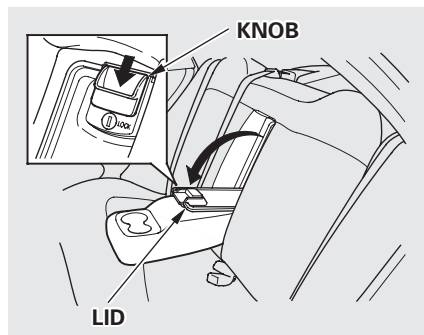
## Rear Seat Armrest

*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*



The rear seat armrest is located at the center of the rear seat. Pivot it down to use it.

## Trunk Pass-through Cover

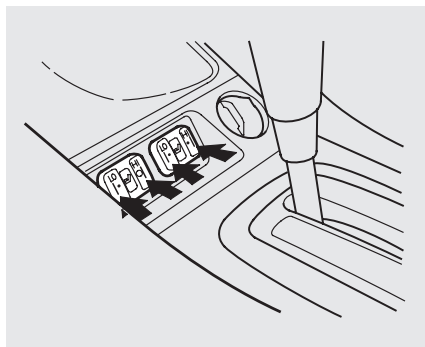


The pass-through cover can be opened from either side; it folds forward onto the center armrest. Open the cover by sliding the knob downward and pushing or pulling on the cover. To close the cover, swing it up and push firmly on the top. Make sure it latches properly. Make sure all items in the trunk and those extending through the pass-through are secured.

For security, this cover can be locked and unlocked only with the master key. To lock the cover, insert the key and turn it clockwise.

Never drive with this cover open and the trunk lid open. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page [51](#).





*On Canadian SE, EX V-6 models and EX model with leather interior*

Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. The ignition must be ON (II) to use them. Push the right side of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the left side of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

The HI or LO indicator lights and remains lit until you turn it off by pushing the opposite side of the switch lightly. The indicator will turn off.

In HI, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops. It continues to cycle as long as you leave it set on HI. The HI indicator remains lit as a reminder that you have the heater on.

In LO, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

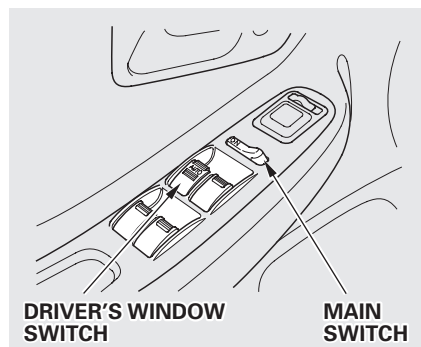
- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly. Select the LO setting when the seats feel warm. The HI setting draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- Do not use the seat heaters, even on the LO setting, if the engine is left idling for an extended period. They can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

Because of the sensors for the side airbag system, there is no heater in the passenger's seat-back.

*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*

Your car's windows are electrically-powered. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II) to raise or lower any window.

Each door has a switch that controls its window. To open the window, push the switch down and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Close the window by pushing the switch up and holding it.



The driver's door armrest has a master power window control panel. To open any of the passengers' windows, push down on the appropriate switch and hold it down until the window reaches the desired position. To close the window, pull back on the window switch. Release the switch when the window gets to the position you want.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

*CONTINUED*

The master control panel also contains these extra features:

**AUTO** — To open the driver's window fully, push the window switch firmly down and release it. The window automatically goes all the way down. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

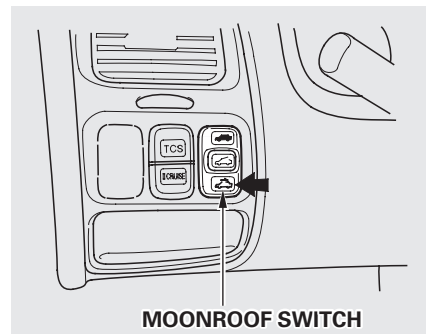
To open the driver's window only partially, push the window switch down lightly and hold it. The window will stop as soon as you release the switch.

The AUTO function only works to lower the driver's window. To raise the window, you must pull back on the window switch and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

The MAIN switch controls power to the passengers' windows. With this switch off, the passengers' windows cannot be raised or lowered. The MAIN switch does not affect the driver's window. Keep the MAIN switch off when you have children in the car so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

The power window system has a key-off delay function. The windows will still operate for up to ten minutes after you turn off the ignition. Opening either front door cancels the delay function. You must turn the ignition switch ON (II) again before you can raise or lower the windows.

### Moonroof



*On U.S. EX and all SE and EX V-6 models*

The moonroof has two positions: it can be tilted up in the back for ventilation, or it can be slid back into the roof. Use the switch under the left dashboard vent to operate the moonroof. The ignition switch must be ON (II).

The master control panel also contains these extra features:

**AUTO** — To open the driver's window fully, push the window switch firmly down and release it. The window automatically goes all the way down. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

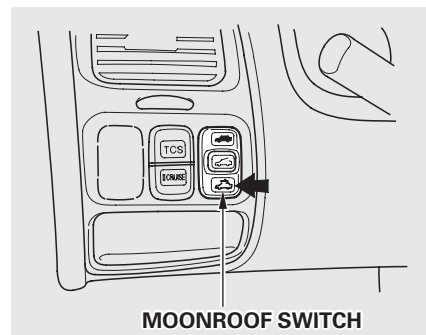
To open the driver's window only partially, push the window switch down lightly and hold it. The window will stop as soon as you release the switch.

The AUTO function only works to lower the driver's window. To raise the window, you must pull back on the window switch and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

The MAIN switch controls power to the passengers' windows. With this switch off, the passengers' windows cannot be raised or lowered. The MAIN switch does not affect the driver's window. Keep the MAIN switch off when you have children in the car so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.




The power window system has a key-off delay function. The windows will still operate for up to ten minutes after you turn off the ignition. Opening either front door cancels the delay function. You must turn the ignition switch ON (II) again before you can raise or lower the windows.

### Moonroof



*On U.S. EX and all SE and EX V-6 models*

The moonroof has two positions: it can be tilted up in the back for ventilation, or it can be slid back into the roof. Use the switch under the left dashboard vent to operate the moonroof. The ignition switch must be ON (II).

To tilt up the back of the moonroof, press and hold the center button (  ). To close the moonroof, press and hold the top of the switch (  ). To open the moonroof, press and hold the bottom of the switch (  ). Release the switch when the moonroof gets to the desired position. Make sure everyone's hands are away from the moonroof before opening or closing it.

## ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

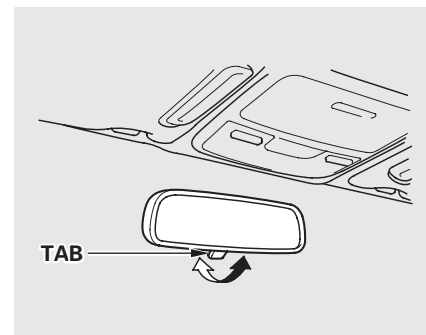
Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

The moonroof has a key-off delay. You can still open and close the moonroof for up to ten minutes after you turn off the ignition. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door. You must then turn the ignition ON (II) for the moonroof to operate.

## NOTICE

*If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or motor.*




## Mirrors



Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror has day and night positions. The night position reduces glare from headlights behind you. Flip the tab on the bottom edge of the mirror to select the day or night position.

*CONTINUED*

To tilt up the back of the moonroof, press and hold the center button (  ). To close the moonroof, press and hold the top of the switch (  ). To open the moonroof, press and hold the bottom of the switch (  ). Release the switch when the moonroof gets to the desired position. Make sure everyone's hands are away from the moonroof before opening or closing it.

## ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

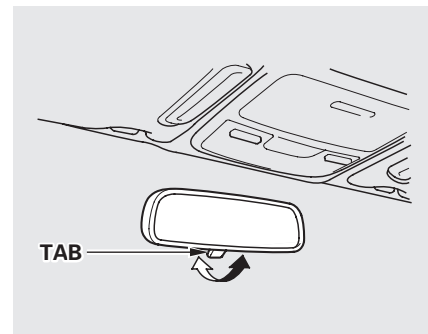
Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

The moonroof has a key-off delay. You can still open and close the moonroof for up to ten minutes after you turn off the ignition. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door. You must then turn the ignition ON (II) for the moonroof to operate.

## NOTICE

*If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or motor.*

## Mirrors

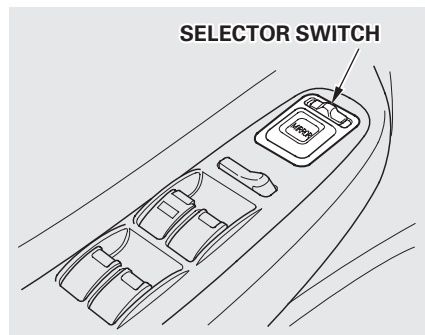


Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror has day and night positions. The night position reduces glare from headlights behind you. Flip the tab on the bottom edge of the mirror to select the day or night position.

*CONTINUED*

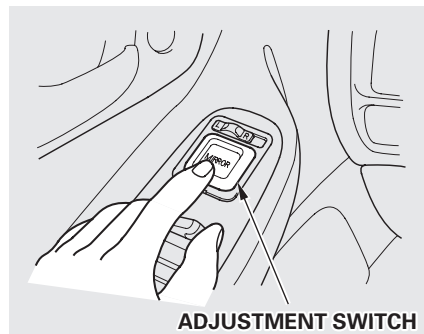
## Adjusting the Power Mirrors



*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*

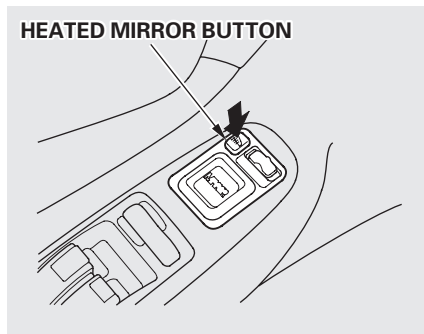
Adjust the outside mirrors with the adjustment switch on the driver's door armrest:

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Move the selector switch to L (driver's side) or R (passenger's side).



3. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.
4. When you finish, move the selector switch to the center (off) position. This turns off the adjustment switch so you can't move a mirror out of position by accidentally bumping the switch.

HEATED MIRROR BUTTON

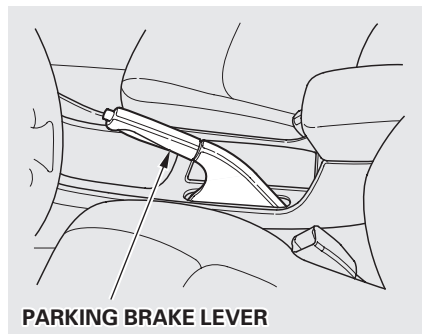


*On all Canadian models*

The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch ON (II), turn on the heaters by pressing the button. The light in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters off.

## Parking Brake

PARKING BRAKE LEVER

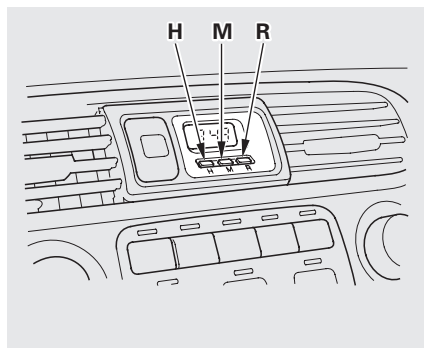


To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up fully. To release it, pull up slightly, push the button, and lower the lever. The parking brake light on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released with the engine running (see page [57](#)).

## NOTICE

*Driving the car with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and axles.*





The digital clock displays the time with the ignition switch in any position.

To set the clock:

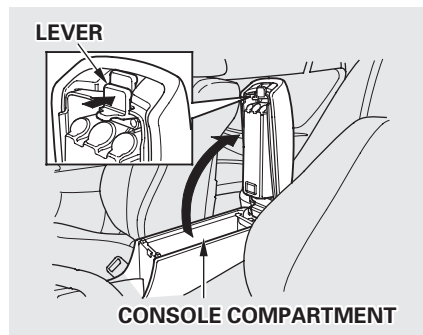
1. Press and hold the H button until the hour advances to the desired time.
2. Press and hold the M button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

You can use R to quickly set the time to the nearest hour. If the displayed time is before the half hour, pressing R sets the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, pressing R sets the clock forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example:

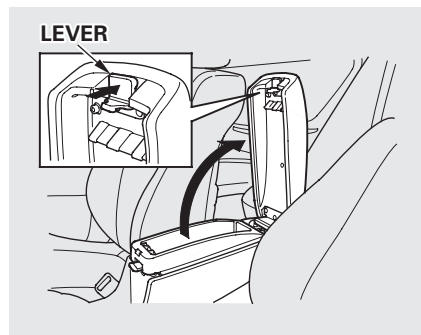
- 1:06 would RESET to 1:00.
- 1:52 would RESET to 2:00.

## Console Compartment



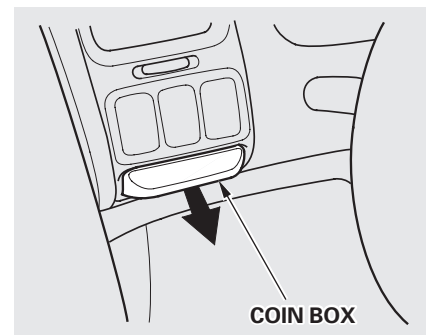
To open the console compartment, pull up on the lower lever and lift the lid.

To close, lower the lid and push it down until it latches.



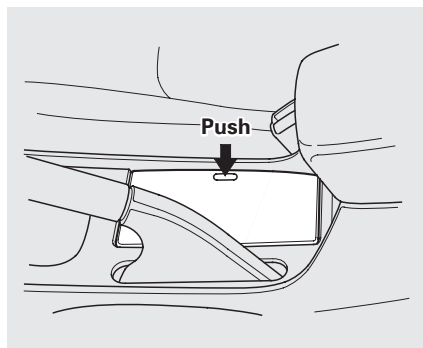
You can put small items in the tray located in the console compartment lid. To use the tray, pull up on the upper lever and lift up the armrest pad.

## Coin Box

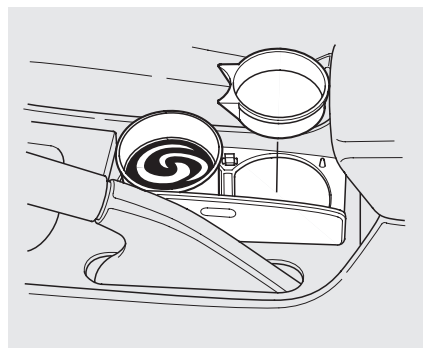


The coin box is located under the air vent. To open the coin box, pull the bottom edge. Close it with a firm push.

## Beverage Holder

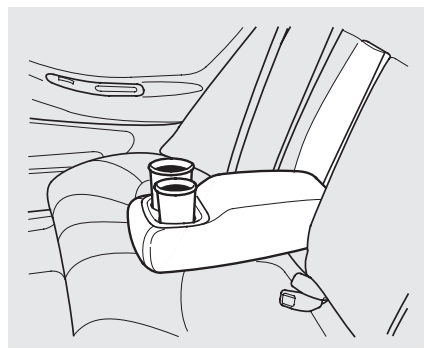


To open the beverage holder, push on the top. The beverage holder lid is spring-loaded and will swing open. To close it, push it down until it latches.



The inner liner can be removed if you want to hold a larger cup.

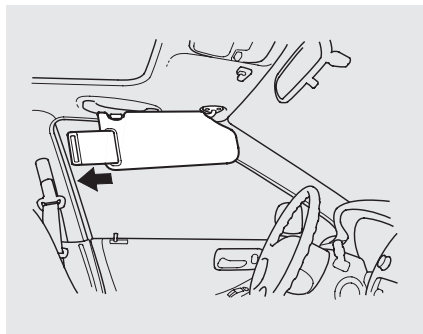
Be careful when you are using the beverage holder. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Spilled liquids can also damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.



*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package models*

The rear seat also has a beverage holder in the center armrest. To use it, pivot the armrest down.

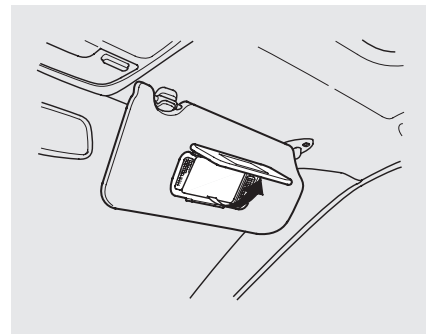
## Sun Visor



To use the sun visor, pull it down. You can also use the sun visor at the side window. Remove the support rod from the clip and swing the sun visor toward the side window. In this position, the sun visor can be extended by sliding out the extension.

Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the car. Do not use the sun visor extension over the rear view mirror.

## Vanity Mirror

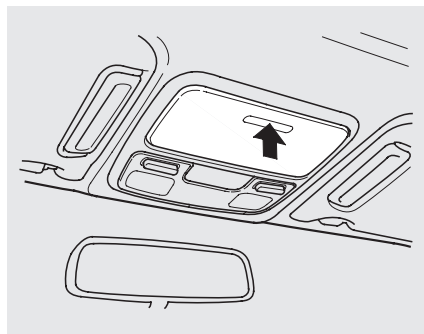


To use a vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

All models except the U.S. DX and Value Package models have lighted vanity mirrors.

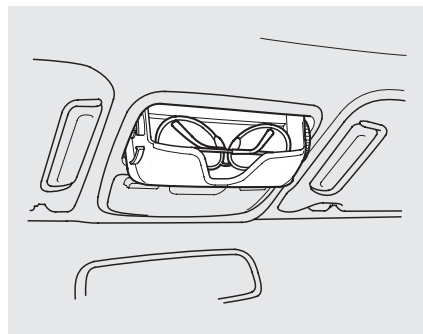
The light beside the mirror comes on only when the headlight switch is in one of the on positions.

## Sunglasses Holder



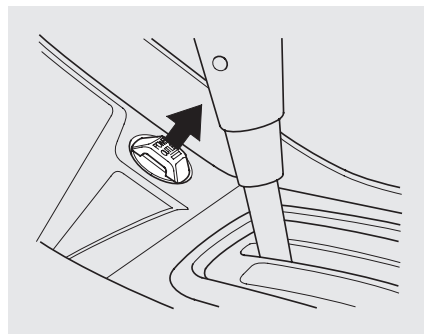
*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*

To open the sunglasses holder, push on the front edge. It will unlatch and swing down. To close it, push it until it latches. Make sure the holder is closed while you are driving.



Some larger styles of sunglasses may not fit in the holder.

## Accessory Power Socket

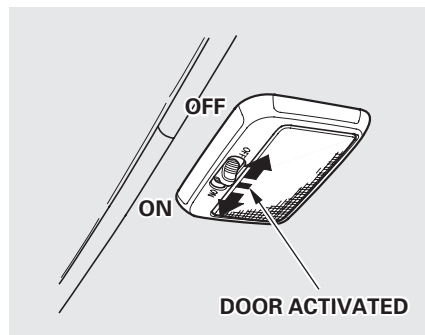


To use the accessory power socket, pull out on the cover. The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II).

This socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

It will not power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

## Ceiling Light



The ceiling light has a three-position switch. In the OFF position, the light does not come on. In the center position, the ceiling light comes on when you open any door.

*U.S. DX, Value Package, LX, LX V-6 and all SE models*

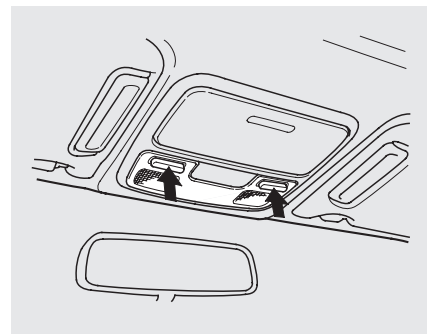
The light goes out when all doors are closed.

*EX, EX V-6*

After all doors are closed tightly, the light dims slightly, then fades out in about 10 seconds. In the ON position, the ceiling light stays on continuously.

The ceiling light (with the switch in the center position) also comes on when you unlock the door with the remote transmitter (see page 75). The light fades out after both doors are closed.

## Spotlights



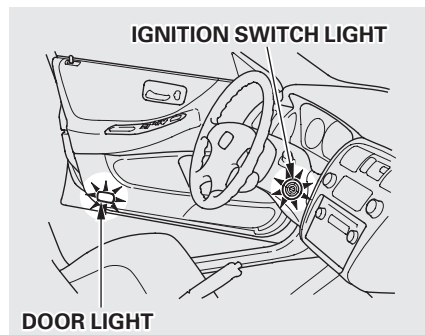
*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*

Turn on the spotlight by pushing the button next to each light. Push the button again to turn it off. You can use the spotlights at all times.

# Interior Lights

---

## Courtesy Lights



*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package*

Each door has a courtesy light. This light comes on when you open the door.

Your car also has a courtesy light in the ignition switch. This light comes on when you open the driver's door. It remains on for several seconds after the door is closed.

Heating and Cooling.....	104	CD player Error		Adjusting the Sound.....	169
What Each Control Does.....	104	Indications .....	140	Radio Frequencies.....	170
How to Use the System.....	107	CD Changer Error		Radio Reception.....	170
To Turn Everything Off .....	110	Indications .....	141	Operating the CD Player .....	172
Climate Control System.....	111	Operating the Cassette		Operating the Optional CD	
Fully-automatic Operation.....	113	Player .....	142	Changer .....	174
Semi-automatic Operation.....	114	Tape Search Functions .....	144	Protecting Compact Discs.....	175
Sunlight Sensor/ Temperature Sensor .....	118	Caring for the Cassette		CD Player Error Indications.....	176
Audio System (DX) .....	119	Player .....	145	CD Changer Error	
Operating the Radio .....	120	Audio System (U.S. EX, Canada EX-L and EX V-6) ...	146	Indications .....	177
Adjusting the Sound.....	123	Operating the Radio .....	147	Operating the Cassette	
Operating the Cassette		Adjusting the Sound.....	151	Player .....	178
Player .....	124	Audio System Lighting .....	152	Caring for the Cassette	
Caring for Cassettes.....	126	Operating the Cassette		Player .....	181
Operating the Optional CD		Player .....	152	Remote Audio Controls .....	182
Changer .....	127	Tape Search Functions .....	153	Theft Protection .....	183
Protecting Compact Discs.....	129	Caring for the Cassette		Security System .....	184
CD Changer Error		Player .....	155	Cruise Control.....	185
Indications .....	130	Operating the CD Changer .....	156	Homelink Universal	
Audio System		Protecting Compact Discs.....	162	Transceiver.....	188
(LX and U.S. LX V-6) .....	131	CD Changer Error			
Operating the Radio .....	131	Indications .....	163		
Adjusting the Sound.....	135	Audio System (U.S. Value			
Operating the CD Player .....	136	Package and SE models) .....	164		
Operating the CD Changer .....	138	Operating the Radio .....	165		



# Heating and Cooling

*Except EX V-6 model*

Proper use of the Heating and Cooling system can make the interior dry and comfortable, and keep the windows clear for best visibility.

If your car does not have air conditioning, it can be installed at any time. Your dealer can install a genuine Honda air conditioning system that meets Honda's high quality standards and is designed to exactly fit your car. Please contact your dealer for more information.

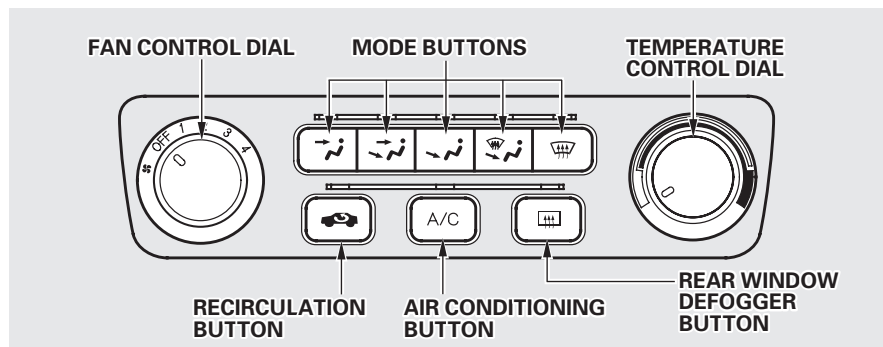
## What Each Control Does

### Fan Control Dial

Turning this dial clockwise increases the fan's speed, which increases air flow.

### Temperature Control Dial

Turning this dial clockwise increases the temperature of the air flow.



### Air Conditioning (A/C) Button

Air Conditioning is optional on the U.S. DX model.

This button turns the air conditioning ON and OFF. The indicator above the button lights when the A/C is on.

### Rear Window Defogger Button

This button turns the rear window defogger on and off (see page 68 ).


### Recirculation Button

This button controls the source of the air going into the system. When the indicator above this button is lit, air from the car's interior is sent through the system again (Recirculation mode). When the indicator is off, air is brought in from outside the car (Fresh Air mode).


## Mode Buttons




Use the MODE buttons to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes.

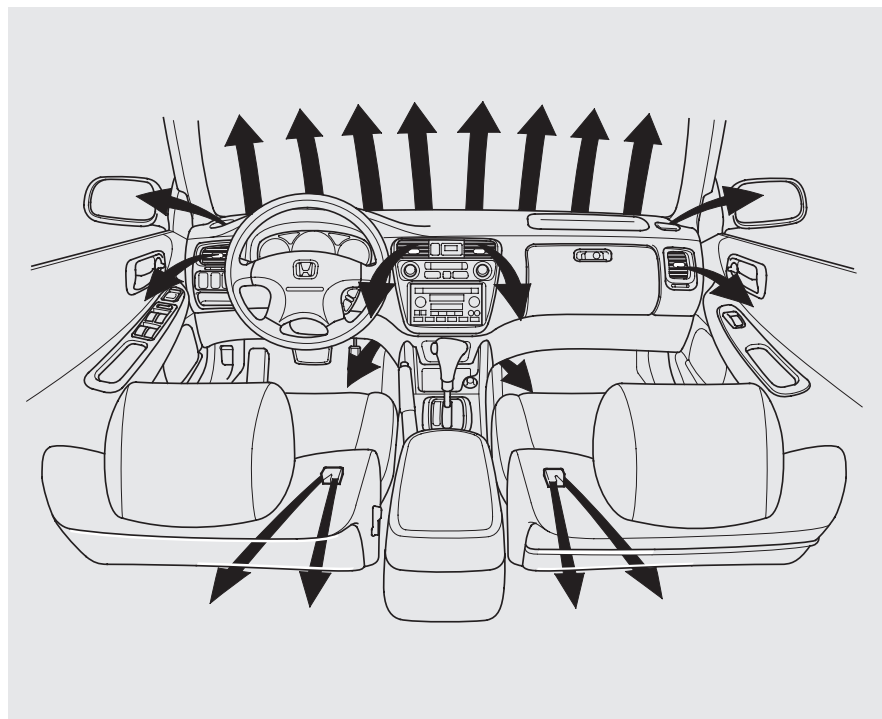
 Air flows from the center and corner vents in the dashboard.

 Air flow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

 Air flows from the floor vents.

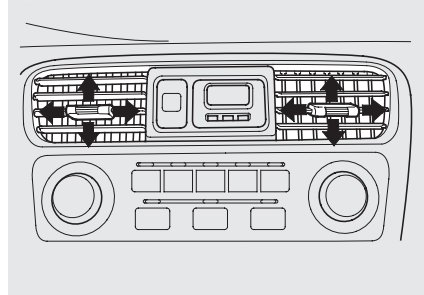
 Air flow is divided between the floor vents and the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

 Air flows from the defroster vents at the base of the windshield. When you select  or  , the system automatically switches to Fresh Air mode and turns on the A/C.



## Vent Controls

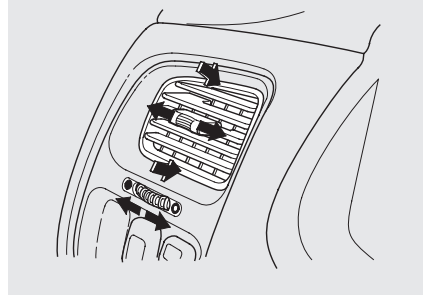
### CENTER VENT



The direction of air flow from the vents in the center and each side of the dashboard is adjustable.

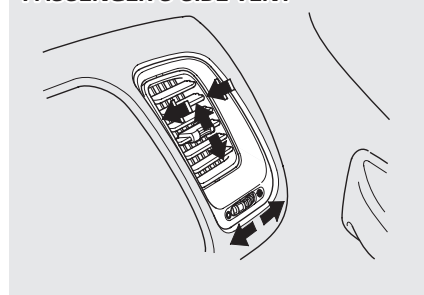
To adjust the air flow from the center vent, move the tab up-and-down and side-to-side.

### DRIVER'S-SIDE VENT



On the driver's-side vent, move the vent up-and-down and move the tab side-to-side. On the passenger's-side vent, move the tab up-and-down and move the vent side-to-side.

### PASSENGER'S-SIDE VENT



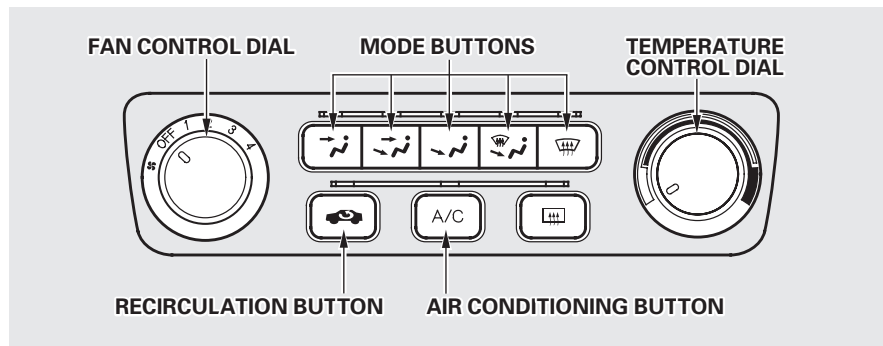
The vents in the corners of the dashboard can be opened and closed with the dials underneath them.

## How to Use the System

This section covers how to set up the system controls for ventilation, heating, cooling, dehumidifying, and defrosting.

The engine must be running for the heater and air conditioning to generate hot and cold air. The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air. If the engine is cold, it will be several minutes before you feel warm air coming from the system. The air conditioning does not rely on engine temperature.


It is best to leave the system in Fresh Air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in Recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up. Switch to Recirculation mode when you are driving through smoky or dusty conditions, then switch back to Fresh Air mode when the condition clears.



The outside air intakes for the heating and cooling system are at the base of the windshield. Keep these clear of leaves and other debris.


## Ventilation

The flow-through ventilation system draws in outside air, circulates it through the interior, then exhausts it through vents near the rear window.


1. Turn the temperature control dial all the way to the left.  
Make sure the A/C is off.
2. Select  and Fresh Air mode.
3. Set the fan to the desired speed.

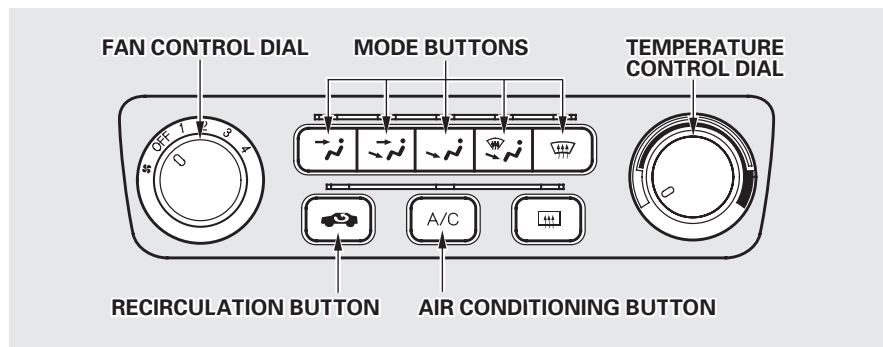
*CONTINUED*

## To Cool with A/C

1. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button. The light above the button should come on when a fan speed is selected.
2. Make sure the temperature control dial is set to maximum cool.
3. Select .
4. If the outside air is humid, select Recirculation mode. If the outside air is dry, select Fresh Air mode.
5. Set the fan to the desired speed.

If the interior is very warm from being parked in the sun, you can cool it down more rapidly by setting up the controls this way:

1. Start the engine.
2. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button. Make sure the temperature control dial is set to maximum cool.
3. Set the fan to maximum speed.
4. Open the windows partially. Select  and Fresh Air mode.




When the interior has cooled down to a more comfortable temperature, close the windows and set the controls as described for normal cooling.

Air conditioning places an extra load on the engine. Watch the engine coolant temperature gauge (see page [61](#)) when driving in stop-and-go traffic or climbing a long, steep hill. If it moves near the red zone, turn off the A/C until the gauge reads normally.


## *To Heat*

To warm the interior:

1. Start the engine.
2. Select  and Fresh Air mode.
3. Set the fan to the desired speed.
4. Adjust the warmth of the air with the temperature control dial.

## *To Heat and Dehumidify with Air Conditioning*



Air conditioning, as it cools, removes moisture from the air. When used in combination with the heater, it makes the interior warm and dry.


1. Switch the fan on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select  and Fresh Air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature control dial so the mixture of heated and cooled air feels comfortable.

This setting is suitable for all driving conditions whenever the outside temperature is above 32°F (0°C).

## *To Defog and Defrost*



To remove fog from the inside of the windows:

1. Switch the fan on.
2. Select  .  
When you select  , the system automatically switches to Fresh Air mode and turns on the A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control dial so the air flow from the defroster vents feels warm.
4. Turn on the rear window defogger to help clear the rear window.

When you switch to another mode from  , the A/C stays on. Press the A/C button to turn it off.

*CONTINUED*

To remove exterior frost or ice from the windshield and side windows after the car has been sitting out in cold weather:

1. Start the engine.
2. Select  .  
When you select  , the system automatically switches to Fresh Air mode and turns on the A/C.
3. Switch the fan and temperature controls to maximum.

To rapidly remove exterior frost or ice from the windshield (on very cold days), first select the Recirculation mode. Once the windshield is clear, select the Fresh Air mode to avoid fogging the windows.

These settings direct all the air flow to the defroster vents at the base of the windshield and the side window defroster vents. The air flow will get warmer and clear the windows faster as the engine warms up. You can close the side vents with the dial underneath each vent. This will send more warm air to the windshield defroster vents.

For safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving away.

## To Turn Everything Off

To shut off the system temporarily, turn the fan speed and temperature control dials all the way to the left.

You should shut the system completely off only for the first few minutes of driving in cold weather, until the engine coolant warms up enough to operate the heater. Keep the fan on at all other times so stale air does not build up in the interior.

*Only on EX V-6 model*

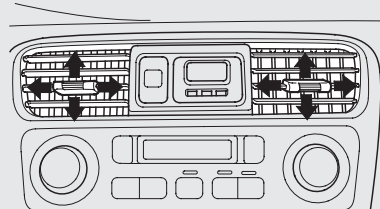
The automatic climate control system in your Honda picks the proper combination of air conditioning, heating, and ventilation to maintain the interior temperature you select. The system also adjusts the fan speed and air flow levels.

The direction of air flow from the vents in the center and each side of the dashboard is adjustable.

The climate control system draws air through the exterior vents at the bottom of the windshield. Keep these vents clear of leaves and other debris.

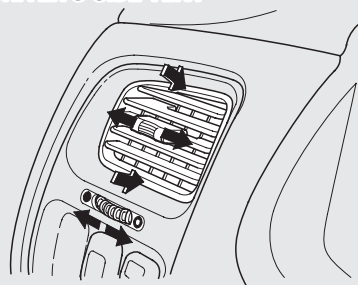
For the climate control system to provide heating and cooling, the engine must be running.

## CENTER VENTS



To adjust the air flow from the center vent, move the tab up-and-down and side-to-side.

## DRIVER'S-SIDE VENT



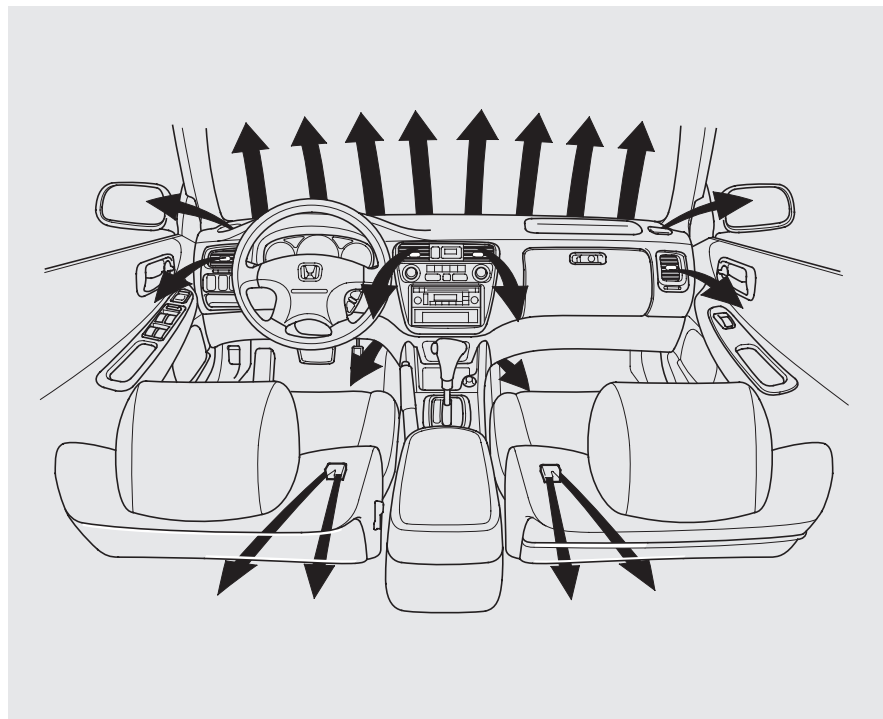
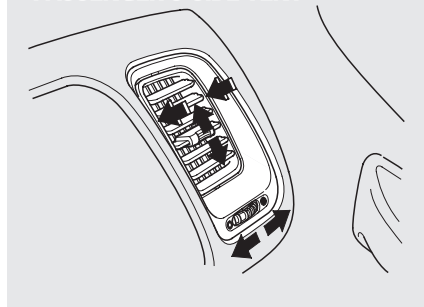
On the driver's-side vent, move the vent up-and-down and move the tab side-to-side. On the passenger's-side vent, move the tab up-and-down and move the vent side-to-side.

The side vents can be opened and closed with the dials underneath them.


*CONTINUED*



PASSENGER'S-SIDE VENT

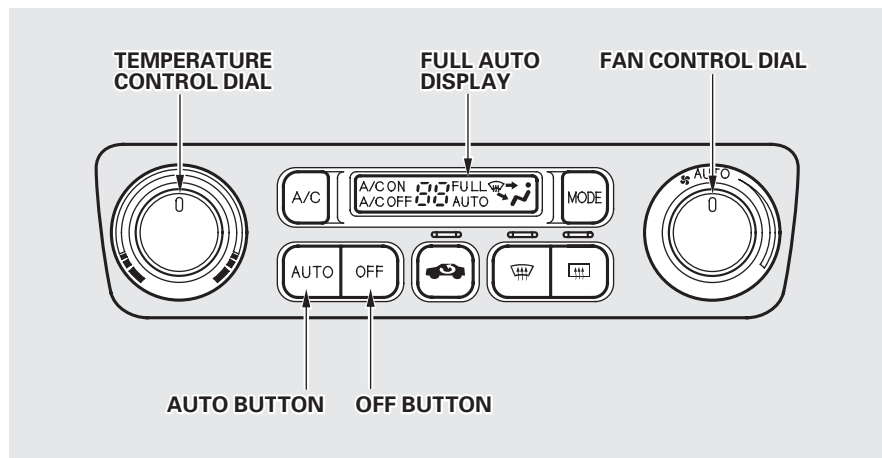


## Fully-automatic Operation

To put the Automatic Climate Control in fully-automatic mode, press the AUTO button and set the fan control dial to AUTO, then set the desired temperature by turning the temperature control dial. You will see FULL AUTO in the system's display. The light above the  button also shows you which mode, Recirculation or Fresh Air, is selected.

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature from its current level to the set temperature.

When you set the temperature to its lower limit (60°F/18°C) or its upper limit (90°F/32°C), the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature. When the temperature is set



between the lower and upper limits, the system regulates the interior temperature to the set value.

In cold weather, the fan will not come on automatically until the car has been driven for a short time and the heater starts to develop warm air.

Pressing the OFF button shuts the climate control system completely off. Keep the system completely off only for short periods. To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.

# Climate Control System

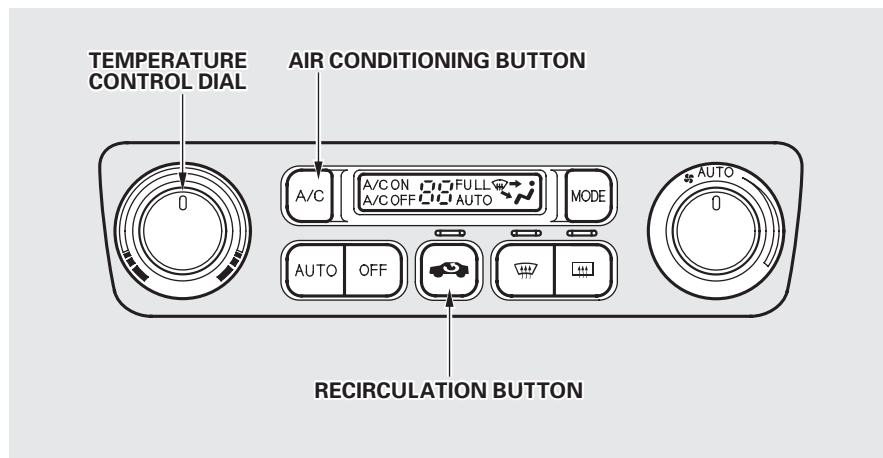
## Semi-automatic Operation

You can manually select various functions of the Climate Control system when it is in FULL AUTO. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word FULL to go out.

### *Air Conditioning (A/C) Button*

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning on and off. You will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display.

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the dial below the outside temperature. With the A/C on, use the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature of the air flow to a comfortable setting.



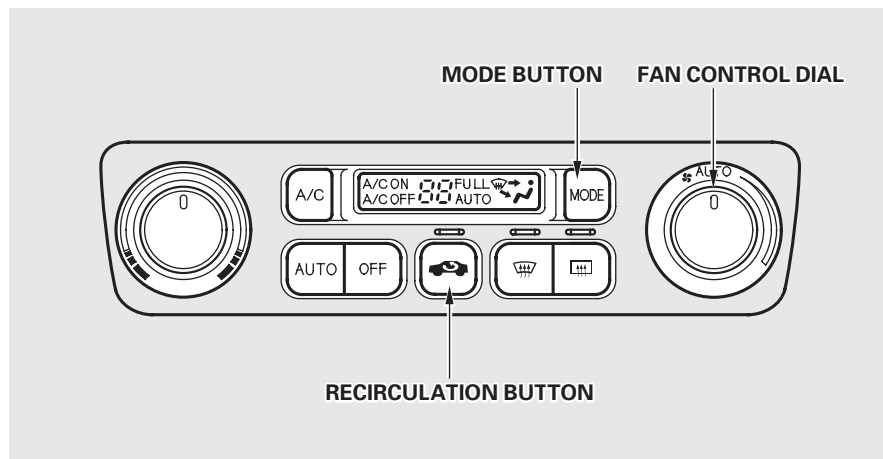
## ***Recirculation Button***

This button controls the source of the air going into the system. When the indicator above this button is lit, air from the car's interior is sent through the system again (Recirculation mode). When the indicator is off, air is brought in from outside the car (Fresh Air mode).

You can, for example, manually put the system in recirculation mode when driving through an area of smoke or fumes.

## ***Fan Control Dial***

You can manually select the fan speed by turning the fan control dial. When you turn the dial clockwise, the fan is taken out of automatic mode and starts to run at its lowest speed. Turning the dial fully clockwise increases the fan's speed, which increases air flow.




## ***Mode Button***


Use the MODE button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes. Each time you press the MODE button, the display shows the mode selected. Press the button four times to see all the modes.


Some air will come out of the side vents in all modes.


*CONTINUED*

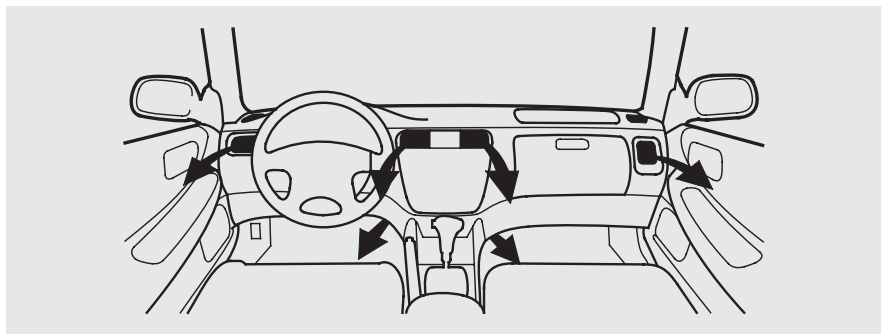
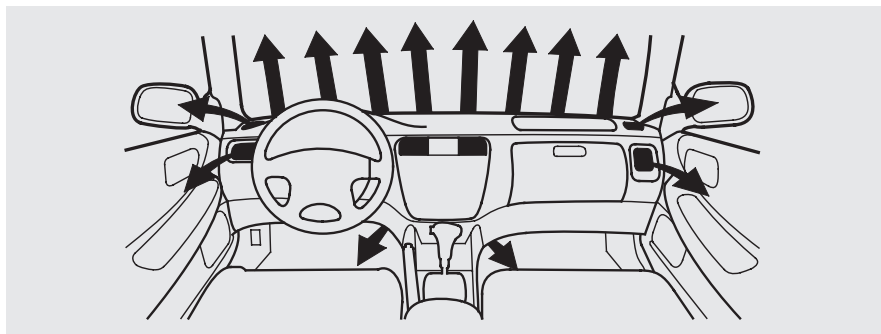
# Climate Control System

 The main air flow is divided between the floor vents and defroster vents at the base of the windshield.


 The main air flow comes from the floor vents.


 The main air flow is divided between the dashboard vents and the floor vents.

 The main air flow comes from the dashboard vents.



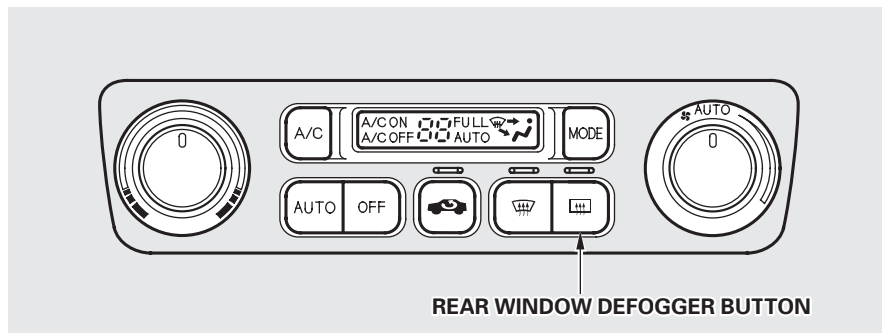
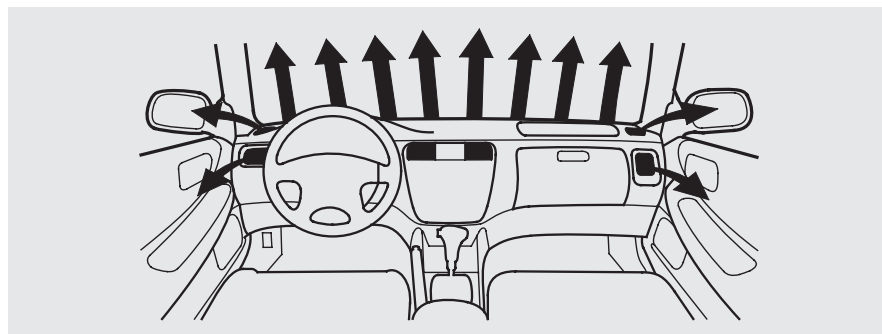
The  button directs the main air flow to the windshield for faster defrosting. It also overrides any MODE selection you may have made.

When you select , the A/C turns on automatically and the system selects Fresh Air mode. For faster defrosting, manually set the fan speed to high. You can also increase air flow to the windshield by closing the side vents in the dashboard.

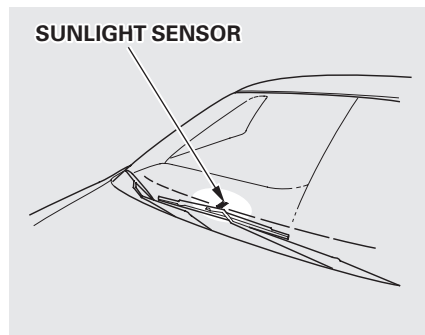
When you turn off  by pressing the button again, the system returns to its former settings.

## ***Rear Window Defogger Button***

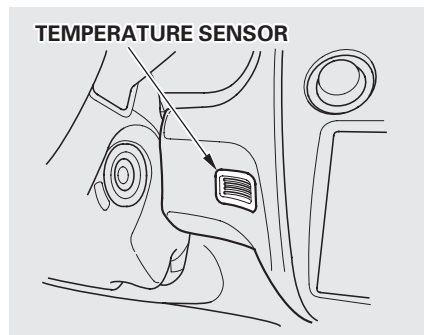
This button turns the rear window defogger on and off (see page 68 ).



## Sunlight Sensor/Temperature Sensor



The climate control system has two sensors. A sunlight sensor is located in the top of the dashboard and a temperature sensor is next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.



## AM/FM/Cassette Stereo Audio System

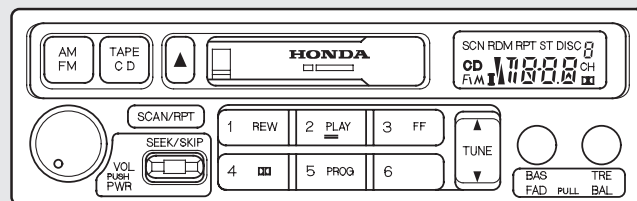
*For U.S. DX model*

Your Honda's audio system provides clear reception on both AM and FM bands, while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favorite stations.

The cassette system features Dolby\* noise reduction, automatic sensing of chromium-dioxide (CrO<sub>2</sub>) tape, and auto-reverse for continuous play.

\* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol

are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.





## Operating the Radio

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the PWR/VOL knob.

Adjust the volume by turning the PWR/VOL knob.

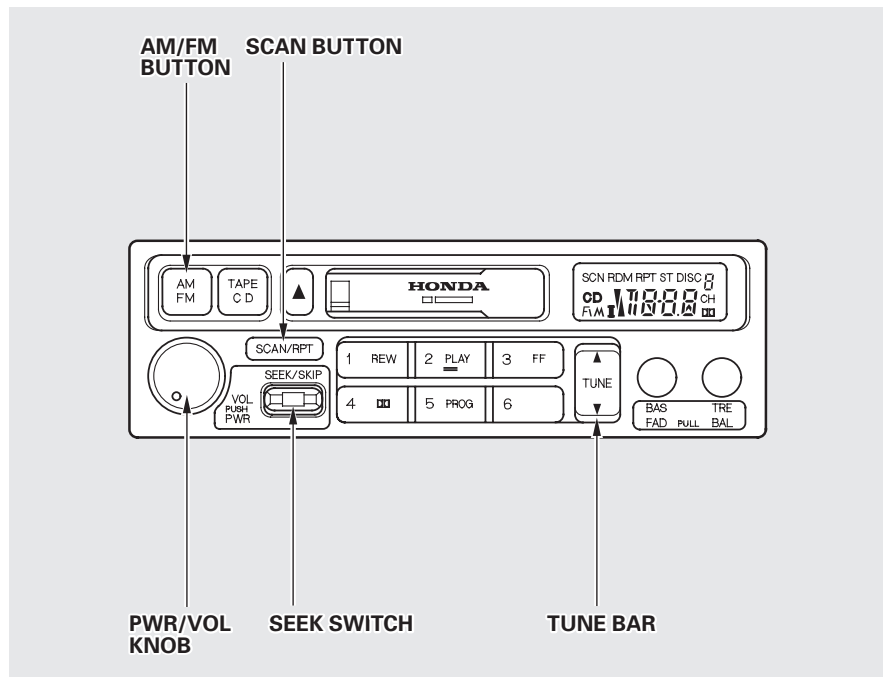
The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

You can use any of four methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN or the Preset buttons.

**TUNE** — Use the TUNE bar to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Press the upper part ( ▲ ) to tune to a higher frequency, or the lower part ( ▼ ) to tune to a lower frequency. The frequency numbers will start to change rapidly. Release the bar when the display reaches the desired frequency. To change the frequency in small increments, press and release the TUNE bar quickly.

**SEEK** — The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, push the SEEK switch up or down, then release it. Depending on which way you push the switch, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

**SCAN** — The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately five seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for five seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

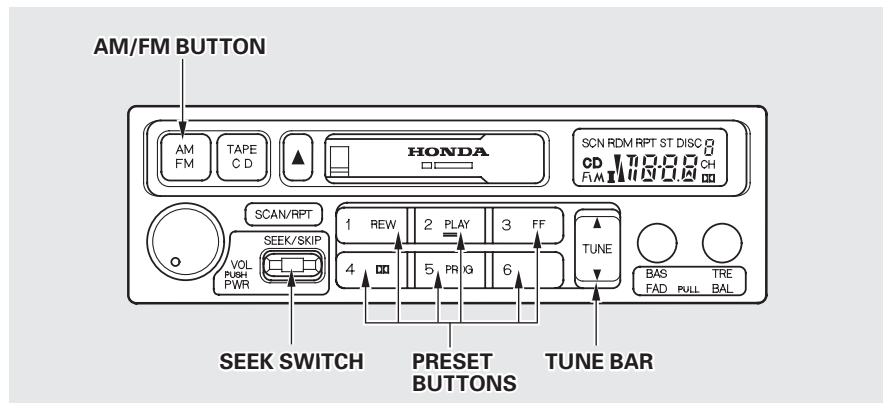


*CONTINUED*

**Preset** — You can store the frequencies of your favorite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two frequencies with each Preset button.
2. Use the TUNE or SEEK function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the Preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve on FM.



Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

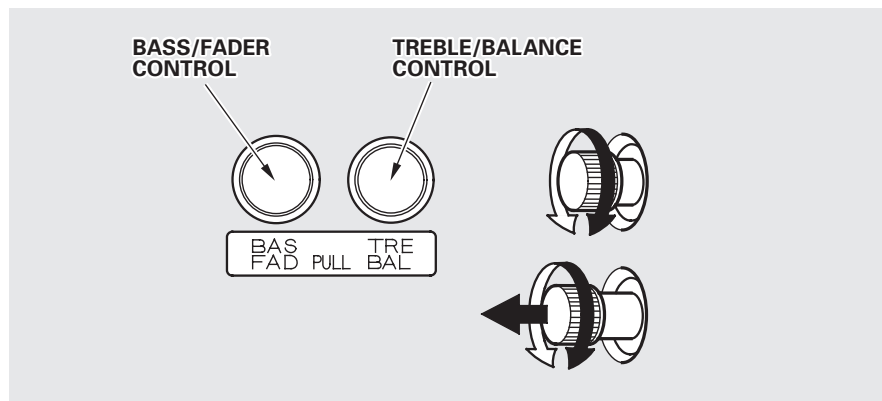
The preset frequencies will be lost if your car's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the radio fuse is removed.

## Adjusting the Sound

**Balance/Fader** — These two controls adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. The Balance control adjusts the side-to-side strength, while the Fader control adjusts the front-to-back strength.

To adjust the fader, push on the BASS/FADER control knob to get it to pop out. Pull it out slightly farther, and adjust the front-to-back sound to your liking. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.

To adjust the balance, push on the TREBLE/BALANCE control knob to get it to pop out. Pull it out slightly farther, and adjust the side-to-side sound to your liking. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.



**Treble/Bass** — Use these controls to adjust the tone to your liking.

To adjust the Treble level, push on the TREBLE/BALANCE control knob to get it to pop out. Without pulling it out farther, turn the knob to adjust the treble level. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.


To adjust the Bass level, push on the BASS/FADER control knob to get it to pop out. Without pulling it out farther, turn the knob to adjust the bass level. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.

**Radio Frequencies and Reception**  
For information, See page [170](#) .

## Operating the Cassette Player

Turn the audio system ON. Make sure the tape opening on the cassette is facing to the right, then insert the cassette most of the way into the slot. The system will pull it in the rest of the way, and begin to play.

The tape direction indicator will light to show you which side of the cassette is playing. The ▲ indicates the side you inserted facing upward is now playing. If you want to play the other side, press the PROG button.

Dolby noise reduction turns on when you insert a cassette. If the tape was not recorded with Dolby noise reduction, turn it off by pressing the  button.

When the system reaches the end of the tape, it will automatically reverse direction and play the other side. If you want to remove the cassette from the drive, press the EJECT button.

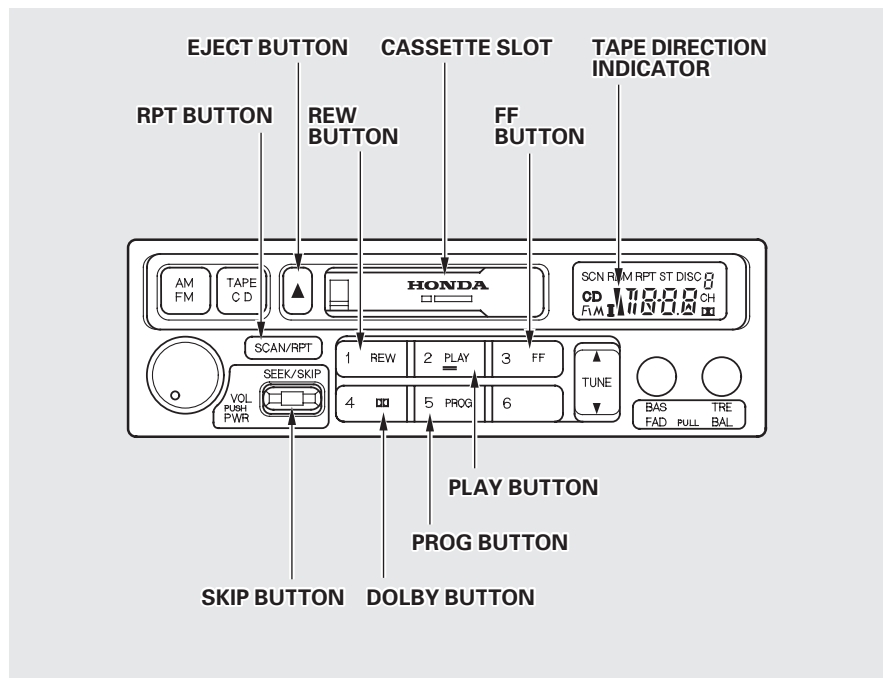
## Tape Search Functions

With a cassette playing, you can use the FF, REW, SKIP, or REPEAT function to find a desired program.

**FF/REW** — Fast Forward and Re-wind move the tape rapidly. To re-wind the tape, push the REW button. You will see REW in the display. To fast forward the tape, push the FF button. You will see FF displayed. Press the PLAY button to take the system out of rewind or fast forward. If the system reaches the end of the tape while in fast forward or rewind, it automatically stops that function, reverses direction, and begins to play.

**SKIP** — The Skip Function allows you to find the beginning of a song or passage. To find the beginning of the song or passage currently playing, push the SKIP switch down. You will see REW flashing in the display as the tape rewinds. To find the beginning of the next song, push the SKIP switch up. You will see FF flashing in the display as the tape fast forwards. When the system finds the beginning of a song or passage, it goes back to PLAY mode.

**REPEAT** — The Repeat function continuously replays the current song or passage. Press the RPT button to activate it; you will see RPT displayed as a reminder. When the system reaches the end of the song or passage currently playing, it will automatically go into rewind. When it senses the beginning of the same song or passage, the system returns to PLAY mode. It will continue to repeat this same program until you deactivate REPEAT by pressing the button again.

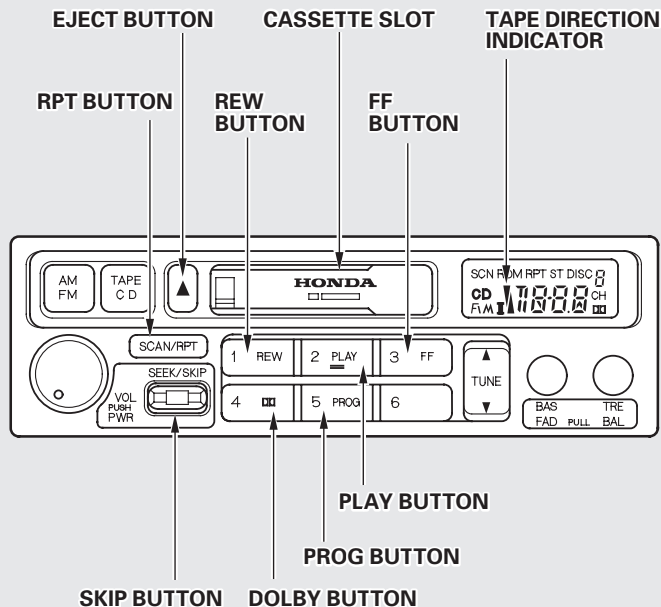


CONTINUED

The SKIP and REPEAT functions use silent periods on the tape to find the end of a song or passage. These features may not work to your satisfaction if there is almost no gap between selections, a high noise level between selections, or a silent period in the middle of a selection.

## Caring for Cassettes

Damaged cassettes can jam inside the drive or cause other problems. See page 181 for information on cassette care and protection.

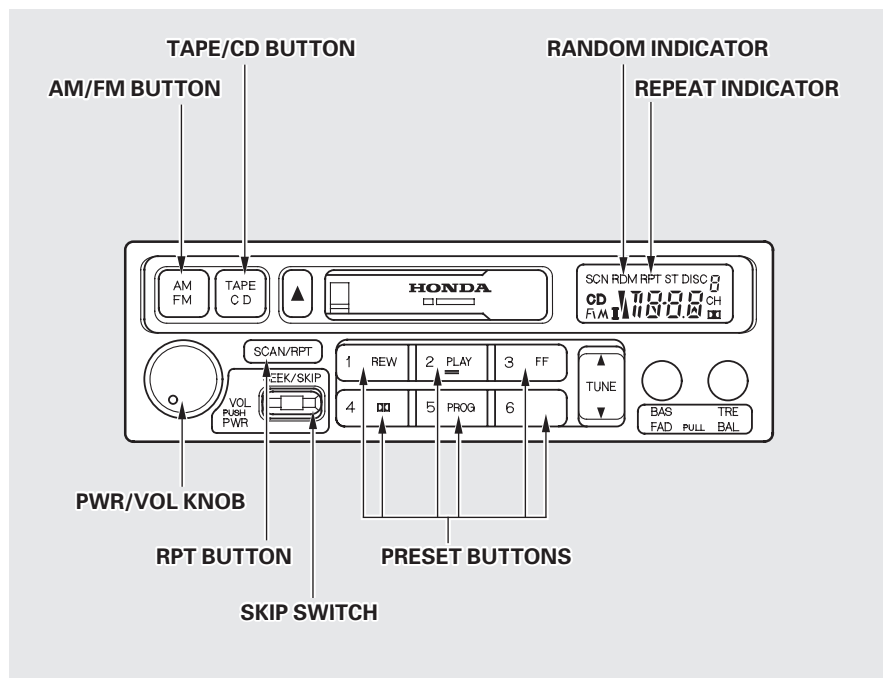


### Operating the Optional CD Changer

A Compact Disc changer is available from your dealer. It holds up to six discs, providing several hours of continuous entertainment. You operate the CD changer with the same controls used for the radio and cassette player.

Your dealer also has an accessory in-dash single CD player available that is operated by the radio controls. To operate this unit, use the instructions (except for those relating to multiple discs) in this section.

Using the instructions that came with the changer, load the desired CDs in the magazine, and load the magazine in the changer. Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.



*CONTINUED*



For best results when using CD-R discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use. When recording a CD-R, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players. CD-RW discs will not work in this unit.

To operate the CD changer or player, the ignition must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) and the audio system must be on.

Press the CD button until “CD” appears in the display. The system will start to play the first track of the first disc in the magazine.

When that disc ends, the next disc in the magazine is loaded and played. After the last disc finishes, the system returns to disc 1.

To select a different disc, press the appropriate preset button (1 – 6). If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will, after finding that slot empty, try to load the CD in the next slot. This continues until it finds a CD to load and play.

You can use the SKIP switch to select tracks within a disc. If you push and release the SKIP switch, the system will move to the beginning of a track. Push the switch up to move to the beginning of the next track, and push the switch down to move to the beginning of the current track.

If you push and hold the SKIP switch, you will hear a beep and the system will continue to move across tracks. Release the switch when you think it has reached the desired place on the disc.

**REPEAT** — When you activate the Repeat feature by pressing the RPT button, the system continuously replays the current track. You will see RPT in the display as a reminder. Press the RPT button again to turn it off.

**RANDOM PLAY** — This feature, when activated, plays the tracks on a CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press and hold the RPT button until you see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly on the current disc. When all tracks on that disc have been played, the next disc is loaded and played randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing RPT again.

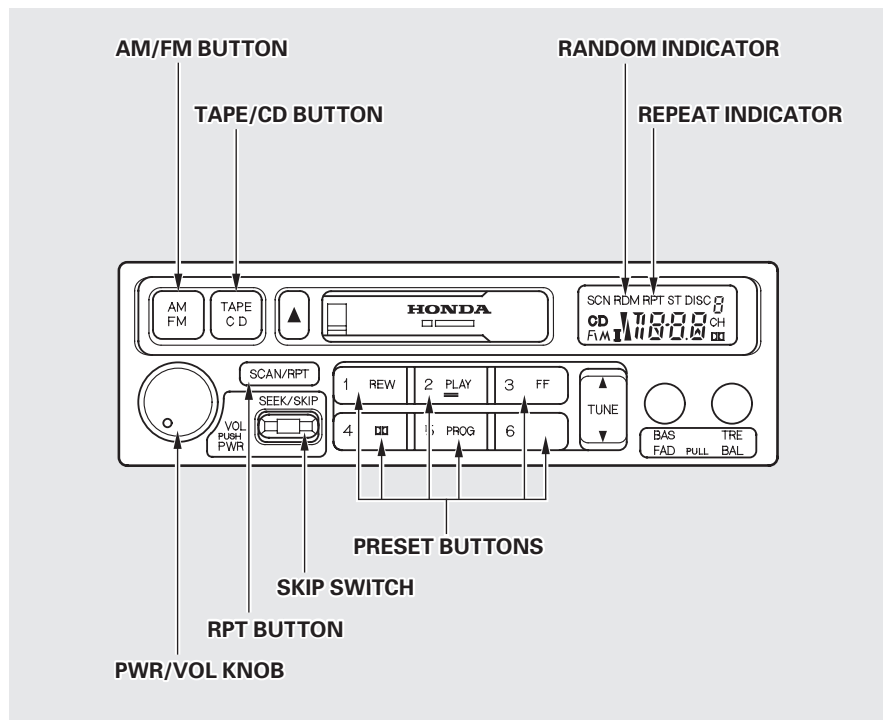
If the system is in Repeat mode, you must turn it off by pressing RPT before you can select Random Play. Then press the button again until you see RDM displayed.

To take the system out of CD mode, press the AM/FM button or insert a cassette in the player. If a tape is already in the cassette player, press the TAPE button. When you return to CD mode, play will continue at the same disc and track.

If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or the ignition switch, play will continue at the same disc and track when you turn it back on.

## Protecting Compact Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page [175](#).



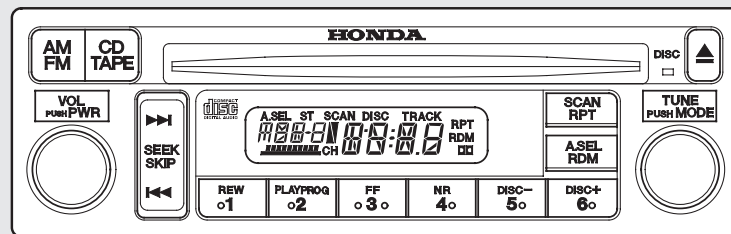
## CD Changer Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD changer, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the car to your Honda dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
E01	Disc-changer malfunction.	If the code disappears within a few seconds, unit is OK. Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your Honda dealer.
	CD magazine ejection impossible.	Press the magazine eject button. If the magazine does not eject, consult your Honda dealer.
E02	Disc is in changer mechanism.	Press the magazine eject button, and insert an empty magazine.
---H	High temperature.	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
EEE	Misconnection or disconnection of CD changer.	See your Honda dealer.
---	No CD magazine in the CD changer.	Insert CD magazine.
000	No CD in magazine.	Insert CD in magazine.

**AM/FM/CD Audio System***For LX and U.S. LX V-6 models*

Your Honda's audio system provides clear reception on both AM and FM bands, while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favorite stations.

**Operating the Radio**

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the PWR/VOL knob or the AM/FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

*CONTINUED*

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN, AUTO SELECT, and the Preset buttons.

**TUNE** — Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the TUNE knob to the right to tune to a higher frequency, or to the left to tune to a lower frequency. Turn the knob right or left until the display reaches the desired frequency.

**SEEK** — The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the SEEK bar on either the **◀◀** or **▶▶** side, then release it.

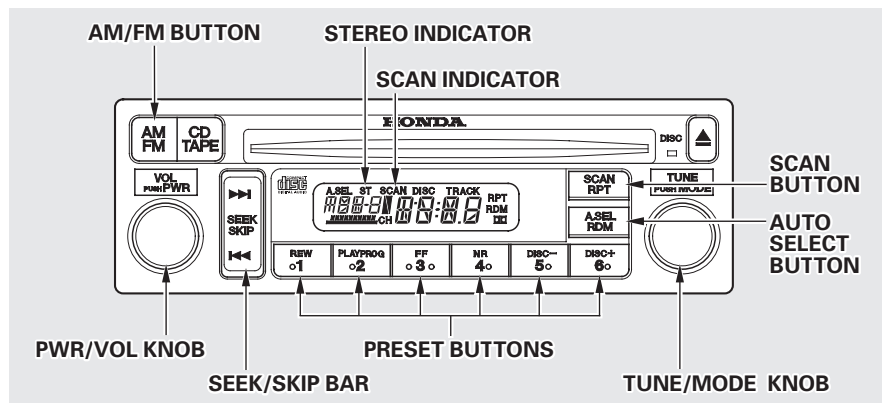
Depending on which side you press, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

**SCAN** — The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. When the system is in the SCAN mode, SCAN shows in the display. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately five seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for five seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

**Preset** — You can store the frequencies of your favorite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two frequencies with each Preset button.
2. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the Preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve on FM.



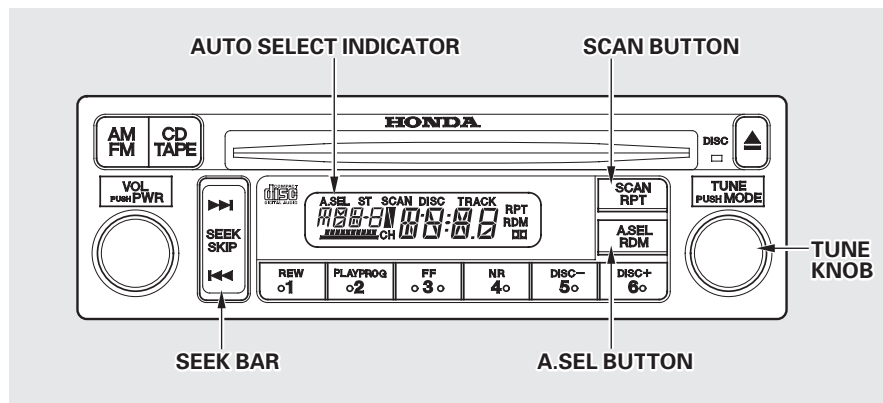
Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

The preset frequencies will be lost if your car's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the radio fuse is removed.

**AUTO SELECT** — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the Auto Select feature to find stations in the local area.

To activate Auto Select, press the A. SEL button. A. SEL will flash in the display, and the system will go into scan mode for several seconds. It automatically scans both bands, looking for stations with strong signals. It stores the frequencies of six AM stations and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. You can then use the preset buttons to select those stations.

If you are in a remote area, Auto Select may not find six strong AM stations or twelve strong FM stations. If this happens, you will see a “0” displayed when you press any preset button that does not have a station stored.



If you do not like the stations Auto Select has stored, you can store other frequencies in the preset buttons. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to find the desired frequencies, then store them in the selected preset buttons as described previously.

Auto Select does not erase the frequencies that you preset previously. When you return home, turn off Auto Select by pressing the A. SEL button. The preset buttons will then select the frequencies you originally set.

### Adjusting the Sound

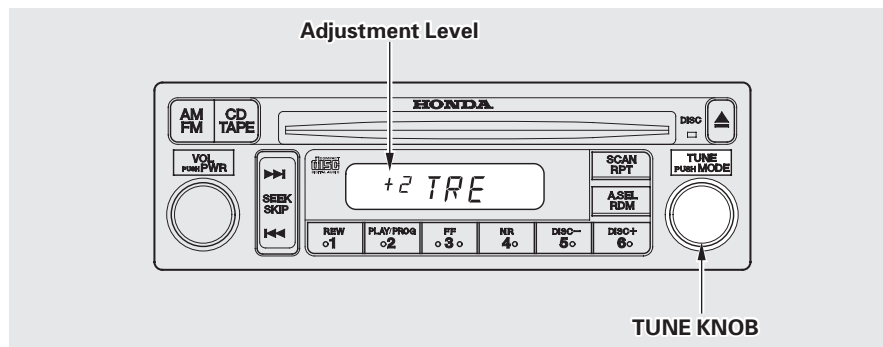
Bass, Treble, Balance, and Fader are each adjustable. You select which of these you want to adjust by pressing the TUNE knob. The mode changes from BAS to TRE to FAD to BAL, and then back to the selected audio mode, each time you press the TUNE knob. Each mode is shown in the display as it changes.

**Balance/Fader** — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjusts the side-to-side strength, while FAD adjusts the front-to-back strength.

Select BAL or FAD by pressing the TUNE knob. Adjust the Balance or Fader to your liking by turning the TUNE knob.

The displayed number shows you the current setting.

When the adjustment level reaches the center, you will see “ [ ”.



**Treble/Bass** — Use these modes to adjust the tone to your liking. Select TRE or BAS by pressing the TUNE knob. Adjust the desired mode by turning the TUNE knob.

The displayed number shows you the current setting.

When the adjustment level reaches the center, you will see “ [ ”.

The system will automatically return the display to the selected audio mode about five seconds after you stop adjusting a mode with the TUNE knob.



## Radio Frequencies and Reception

For information, see page 170.

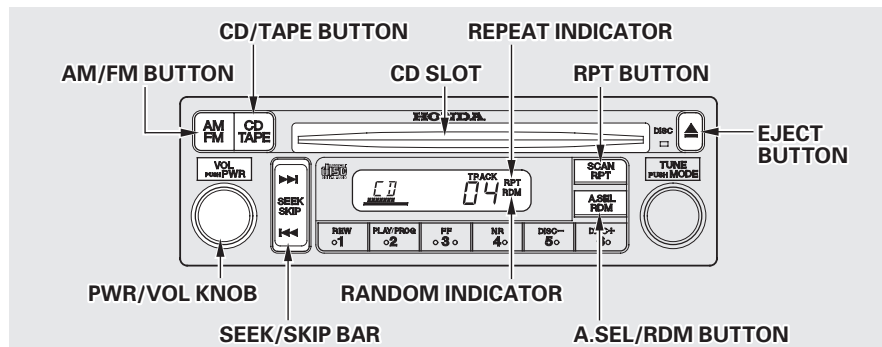
## Audio System Lighting

You can use the instrument panel brightness control dial to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page 65). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the radio is turned off.

## Operating the CD Player

You operate the CD player with the same controls used for the radio.

With the ignition switch in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II), insert the disc into the CD slot. Push the disc in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way and begin to play. The number of the track that is playing is shown in the display.



You can also play 3-inch (8-cm) discs without using an adapter ring. Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

For best results when using CD-R discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use. When recording a CD-R, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players. CD-RW discs will not work in this unit.

When the system reaches the end of the disc, it will return to the beginning and play that disc again.

You can switch to the radio while a CD is playing by pressing the AM/FM button. Press the CD button to return to playing the CD. The CD will begin playing where it left off.

If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or by turning off the ignition, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.

Press the eject button to remove the disc from the drive.

If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 15 seconds and put the CD player in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the CD button.

You can use the SEEK/SKIP bar while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the SEEK/SKIP bar. Press the ►►| side to move forward. You will see CUE in the display. Press the |◄◄ side to move backward. You will see REW displayed. Release the bar when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SEEK/SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the |◄◄ side to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

**REPEAT** — To activate the Repeat feature, press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current track. Press the RPT button again to turn it off.

**RANDOM PLAY** — This feature, when activated, plays the tracks on the CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press and release the A. SEL/RDM button. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing A. SEL/RDM again.

## Operating the CD Changer (Optional)

A Compact Disc changer is available for your car. It holds up to six discs, providing several hours of continuous entertainment. You operate this CD changer with the same controls used for the in-dash CD player.

Load the desired CDs in the magazine and load the magazine in the changer according to the instructions that came with the unit. Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

For best results when using CD-R discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use. When recording a CD-R, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players. CD-RW discs will not work in this unit.

To select the CD changer, press the CD button. The disc and track numbers will be displayed.

To select a different disc, use the Preset 5 (DISC -) or Preset 6 (DISC +) button. Press the Preset 6 button to select the next disc in the magazine. Press the Preset 5 button to select the previous disc. If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will, after finding that slot empty, try to load the CD in the next slot. This continues until it finds a CD to load and play.

If you load a CD in the in-dash player while the changer is playing a CD, the system will stop the changer and begin playing the in-dash CD. To select the changer again, press the CD button. Play will begin where it left off. Use the CD button to switch between the player and the changer.

If you eject the in-dash CD while it is playing, the system will automatically switch to the CD changer and begin play where it left off. If there are no CDs in the changer, the display will flash. You will have to select another mode (AM or FM) with the button.

When you switch back to CD mode, the system selects the same unit (in-dash or changer) that was playing when you switched out of CD mode.

To use the SKIP, REPEAT, and RANDOM functions, refer to the in-dash player operating instructions.

## **Protecting Compact Discs**

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page [175](#).

## CD Player Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD player, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the car to your Honda dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CD DISC	FOCUS Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check if the disc is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged.
CD ERR	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out or the error indication does not disappear after the disc is ejected, see your Honda dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
CD Hot	High temperature.	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.

**CD Changer Error Indications**

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD changer, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the car to your Honda dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
<i>CD DISC</i>	FOCUS Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your Honda dealer.
	No CD in the CD magazine	Insert CD.
<i>CD ERR</i>	Mechanical Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your Honda dealer.
<i>CD HOT</i>	High temperature.	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
<i>CD EJECT</i>	No CD magazine in the CD changer.	Insert CD magazine.

## Audio System

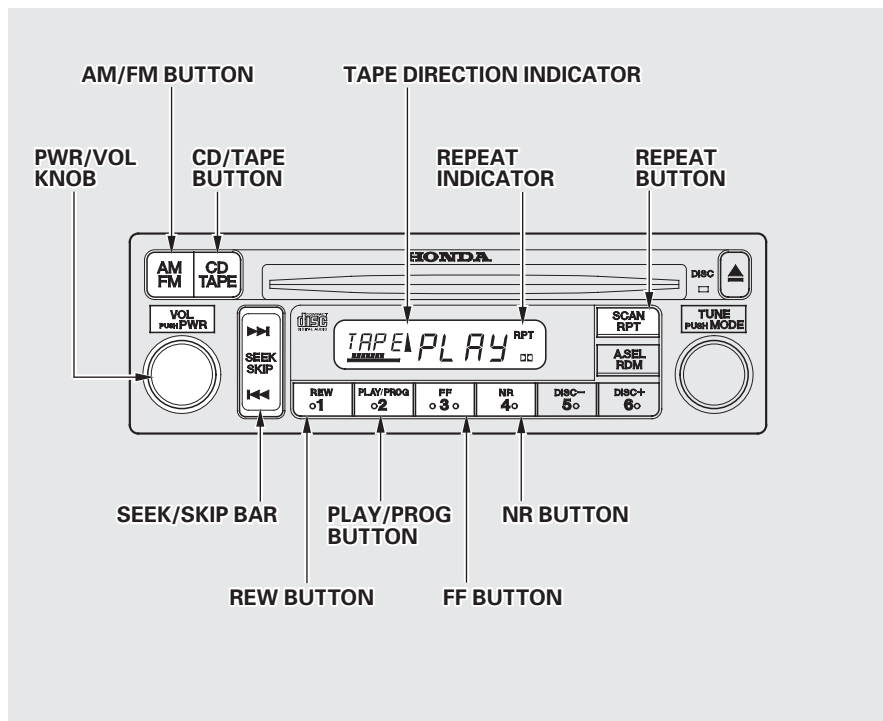
## Operating the Cassette Player (Optional)

The cassette system features Dolby\* noise reduction, automatic sensing of chromium-dioxide (CrO<sub>2</sub>) tape, and auto-reverse for continuous play.

To operate the cassette player, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY(I) or ON(II). Make sure the tape opening on the cassette is facing to the right, then insert the cassette most of the way into the slot. The system will pull it in the rest of the way, and begin to play.

\* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol

Ⓜ are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.



The tape direction indicator will light to show you which side of the cassette is playing. The ▲ indicates the side you inserted facing upward is now playing. If you want to play the other side, press the PLAY/PROG button.

Dolby noise reduction turns on when you insert a cassette. The □□ indicator will light in the display. If the tape was not recorded with Dolby noise reduction, turn it off by pressing the NR button.

Noise reduction remains off until you turn it on by pressing the button again.

When the system reaches the end of the tape, it will automatically reverse direction and play the other side. If you want to remove the cassette from the drive, press the EJECT button on the cassette player.

If you turn the system off while a tape is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or by turning off the ignition, the cassette will remain in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the cassette player will be in pause mode. To begin playing, press the PLAY/PROG button.

To switch to the radio or CD player while a tape is playing, press the AM/FM, or CD/TAPE button. To change back to the cassette player, push the CD/TAPE button.



## Tape Search Functions

With a cassette playing, you can use the FF, REW, SKIP, or REPEAT function to find a desired program.

**FF/REW** — Fast Forward and Re-wind move the tape rapidly. To re-wind the tape, push the REW button. You will see REW in the display. To fast forward the tape, push the FF button. You will see FF displayed. Press the FF, REW or PLAY/PROG button to take the system out of re-wind or fast forward. When the system reaches the end of the tape, it reverses direction and begins to play.

**SKIP** — The Skip function allows you to find the beginning of a song or passage. To activate SKIP, press the SEEK/SKIP bar. Press the ►| side to advance to the beginning of the next song or passage, or the |◄ side to return to the beginning of the current song or passage. FF or REW will flash in the display as the tape moves. When the system reaches the beginning of the next song or passage (FF), or the beginning of the current one (REW), it goes back to PLAY mode.

**REPEAT** — The Repeat function continuously replays the current song or passage. Press the RPT button to activate it; you will see RPT displayed as a reminder. When the system reaches the end of the song or passage currently playing, it will automatically go into rewind. When it senses the beginning of the same song or passage, the system returns to PLAY mode. It will continue to repeat this same program until you deactivate REPEAT by pressing the button again.

The SKIP and REPEAT functions use silent periods on the tape to find the end of a song or passage. These features may not work to your satisfaction if there is almost no gap between selections, a high noise level between selections, or a silent period in the middle of a selection.

**Caring for the Cassette Player**  
Damaged cassettes can jam inside the drive or cause other problems. See page 181 for information on cassette care and protection.

# Audio System

## AM/FM/Cassette/CD Changer Audio System

For U.S. EX, Canada EX-L, and all EX V-6 models

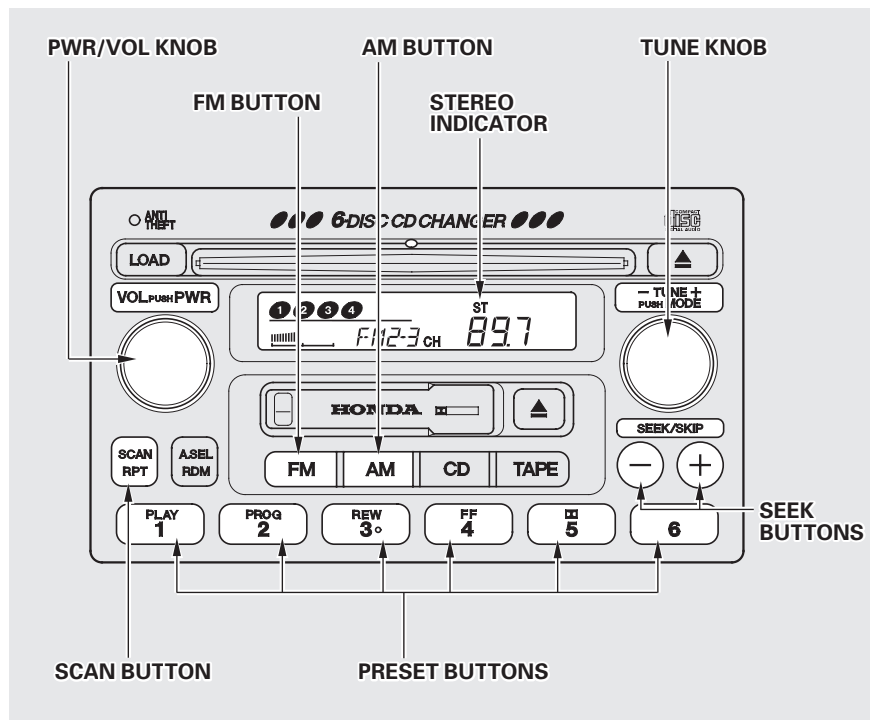
Your Honda's audio system provides clear reception on both AM and FM bands, while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favorite stations.

The cassette system features Dolby\* noise reduction, automatic sensing of chromium-dioxide (CrO<sub>2</sub>) tape, and auto-reverse for continuous play.

\* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol

are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

The in-dash CD changer holds up to six discs. You operate the CD changer with the same controls used for the radio. See page 156 for CD changer operation.



The anti-theft feature will disable the system if it is disconnected from the car's battery. To get the system working again, you must enter a code number (see page 183).

### Operating the Radio

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pressing the PWR/VOL knob or the AM or FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the AM or FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN, AUTO SELECT, and the Preset buttons.

**TUNE** — Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the TUNE knob to the right to tune to a higher frequency, or to the left to tune to a lower frequency. Turn the knob right or left until the display reaches the desired frequency.

**SEEK** — The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press either SEEK button ( $\ominus$  or  $\oplus$ ), then release it. Depending on which SEEK button you press, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

*CONTINUED*

**SCAN** — The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. When the system is in the SCAN mode, SCAN shows in the display. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately five seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for five seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

**Preset** — You can store the frequencies of your favorite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two frequencies with each Preset button.
2. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the Preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve on FM.

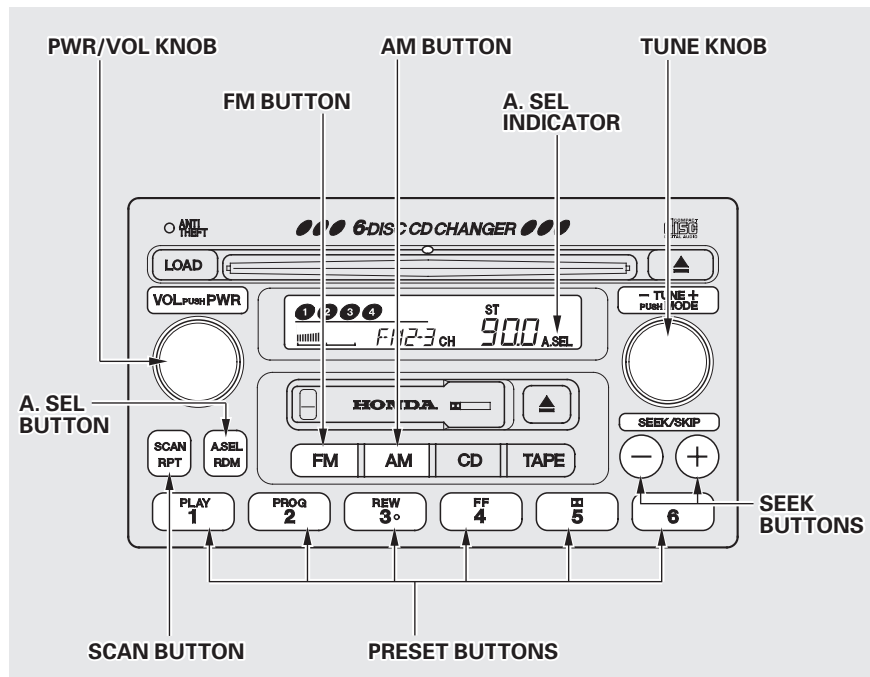
Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

The preset frequencies will be lost if your car's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the radio fuse is removed.

**AUTO SELECT** — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the Auto Select feature to find stations in the local area.

To activate Auto Select, press the A. SEL button. A. SEL will flash in the display, and the system will go into scan mode for several seconds. It automatically scans both bands, looking for stations with strong signals. It stores the frequencies of six AM stations and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. You can then use the preset buttons to select those stations.

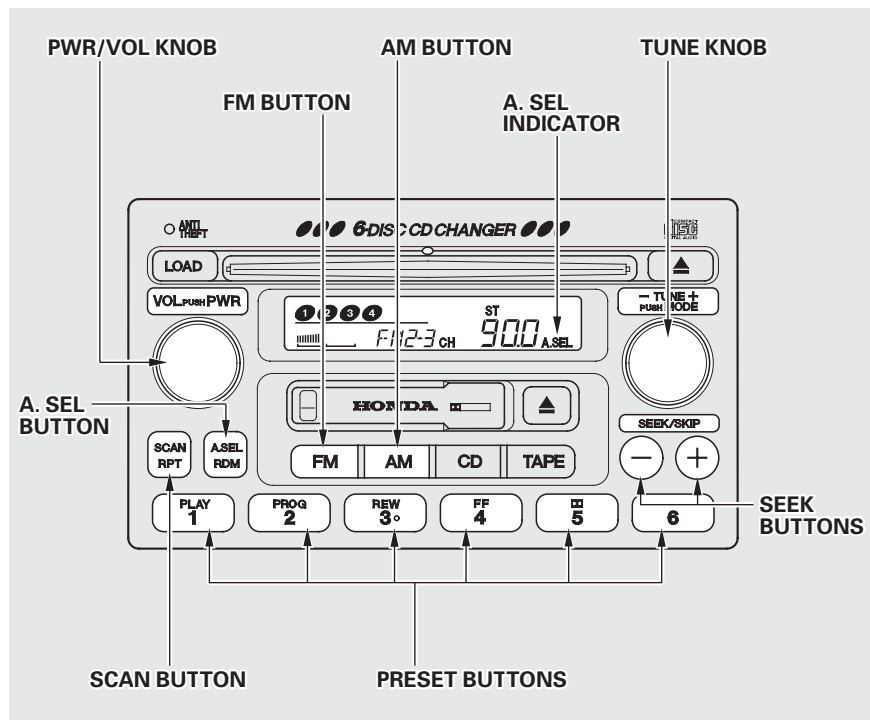
If you are in a remote area, Auto Select may not find six strong AM stations or twelve strong FM stations. If this happens, you will see a "0" displayed when you press any preset button that does not have a station stored.



*CONTINUED*

If you do not like the stations Auto Select has stored, you can store other frequencies in the preset buttons. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to find the desired frequencies, then store them in the selected preset buttons as described previously.

Auto Select does not erase the frequencies that you preset previously. When you return home, turn off Auto Select by pressing the A. SEL button. The preset buttons will then select the frequencies you originally set.

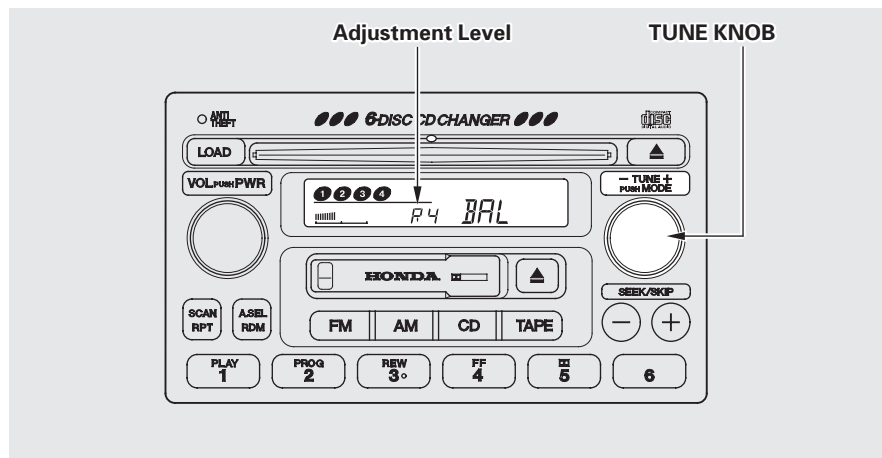


### Adjusting the Sound

Bass, Treble, Balance, and Fader are each adjustable. You select which of these you want to adjust by pressing the TUNE knob. The mode changes from BAS to TRE to FAD to BAL, and then back to the selected audio mode, each time you press the TUNE knob.

**Treble/Bass** — Use these modes to adjust the tone to your liking. Select TRE or BAS by pressing the TUNE knob. Adjust the desired mode by turning the TUNE knob. The displayed number shows you the current setting. When the adjustment level reaches the center, you will see “**7**”.

**Balance/Fader** — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjusts the side-to-side strength, while FAD adjusts the front-to-back strength.



Select BAL or FAD by pressing the TUNE knob. Adjust the Balance or Fader to your liking by turning the TUNE knob. The displayed number shows you the current setting. When the adjustment level reaches the center, you will see “**7**”.

The system will automatically return the display to the selected audio mode about five seconds after you stop adjusting a mode with the TUNE knob.



## Audio System Lighting

You can use the instrument panel brightness control dial to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page 65 ). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the radio is turned off.

## Radio Frequencies and Reception

For information, see page 170 .

## Operating the Cassette Player

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II). Make sure the tape opening on the cassette is facing to the right, then insert the cassette most of the way into the slot. The system will pull it in the rest of the way, and begin to play.

The tape direction indicator will light to show you which side of the cassette is playing. The ▲ indicates the side you inserted facing upward is now playing. If you want to play the other side, press the PROG button.

Dolby noise reduction turns on when you insert a cassette. The □□ indicator will light in the display. If the tape was not recorded with Dolby noise reduction, turn it off by pressing the □□ button.

Noise reduction remains off until you turn it on by pressing the button again.

When the system reaches the end of the tape, it will automatically reverse direction and play the other side. If you want to remove the cassette from the drive, press the EJECT button.

You can remove the cassette with the ignition switch in any position, even if the audio system is turned off.

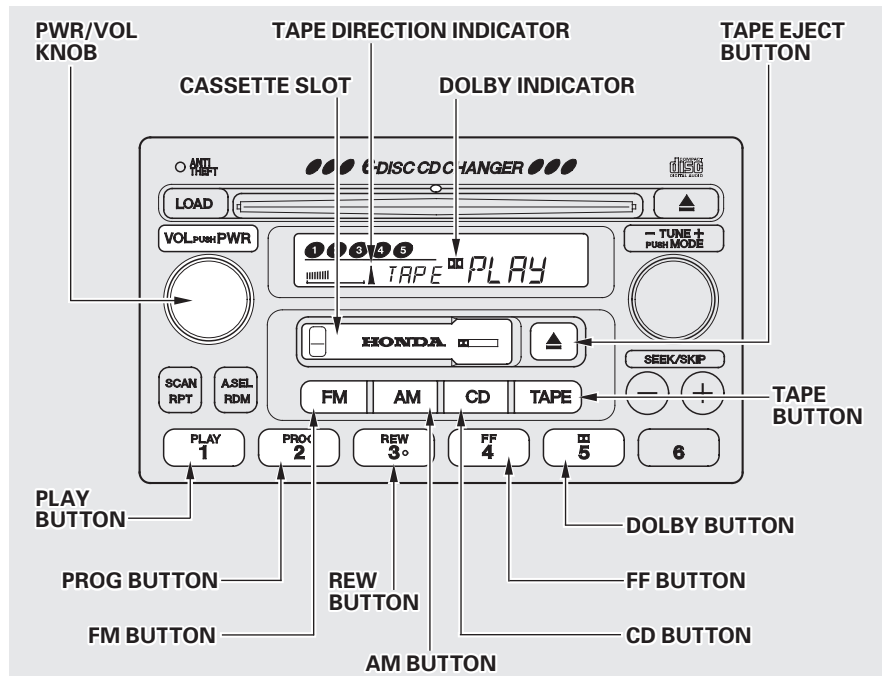
If you turn the system off while a tape is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or by turning off the ignition, the cassette will remain in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the tape will begin playing where it left off.

To switch to the radio or CD changer while listening to a tape, press the AM, FM or CD button. To change back to the cassette player, press the TAPE button.

## Tape Search Functions

With a cassette playing, you can use the FF, REW, SKIP, or REPEAT function to find a desired program.

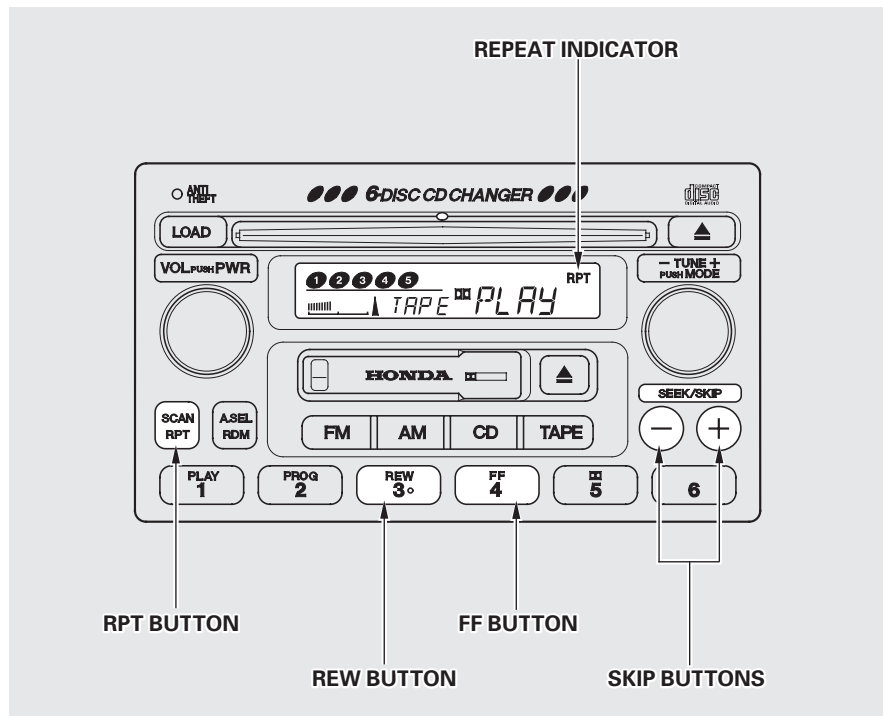
**FF/REW** — Fast Forward and Rewind move the tape rapidly. To rewind the tape, push the REW button. You will see REW in the display. To fast forward the tape, push the FF button. You will see FF displayed. Press the FF, REW or PLAY button to take the system out of rewind or fast forward. When the system reaches the end of the tape, it reverses direction and begins to play.



CONTINUED

**SKIP** — The SKIP function allows you to find the beginning of a song or passage. To skip to the beginning of a song or passage currently playing, push the  $\ominus$  button. You will see REW flashing in the display as the tape rewinds. To skip to the beginning of the next song, push the  $\oplus$  button. You will see FF flashing in the display as the tape fast forwards. When the system finds the beginning of a song or passage, it goes back to PLAY.

To stop the SKIP function before it finds the beginning of a song or passage, press either of the SKIP buttons ( $\ominus$  or  $\oplus$ ).



**REPEAT** — The Repeat function continuously replays the current song or passage. Press the RPT button to activate it; you will see RPT displayed as a reminder. When the system reaches the end of the song or passage currently playing, it will automatically go into rewind. When it senses the beginning of the same song or passage, the system returns to PLAY mode. It will continue to repeat this same program until you deactivate REPEAT by pressing the button again. Pressing the REW or FF button, or either of the SKIP buttons, also turns off REPEAT.

The SKIP and REPEAT functions use silent periods on the tape to find the end of a song or passage. These features may not work to your satisfaction if there is almost no gap between selections, a high noise level between selections, or a silent period in the middle of a selection.

**Caring for the Cassette Player**  
Damaged cassettes can jam inside the drive or cause other problems. See page 181 for information on cassette care and protection.

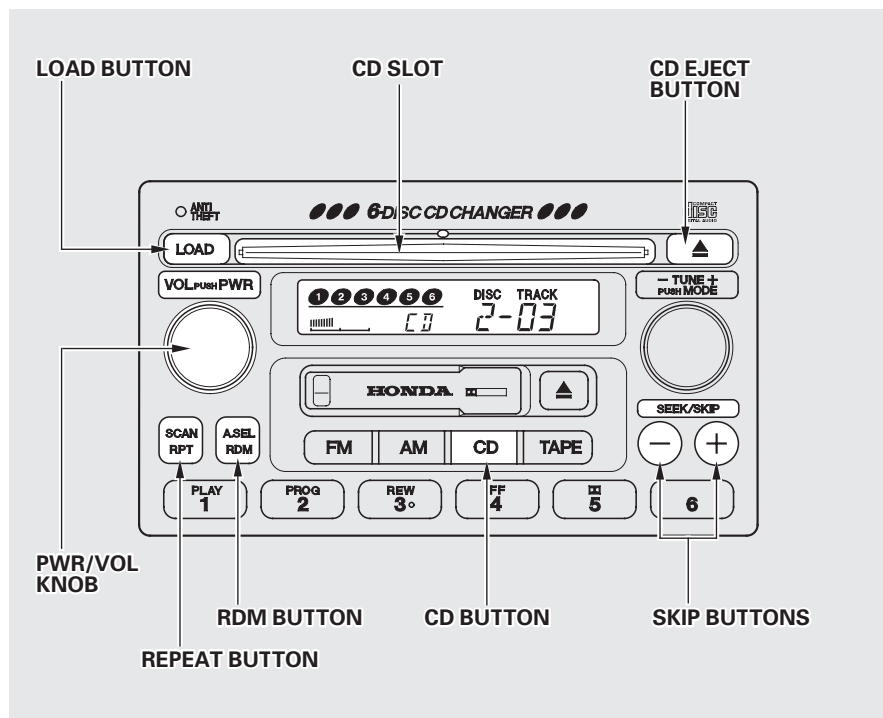
## Operating the CD Changer

Your Honda's audio system has an in-dash CD changer that holds up to six discs, providing several hours of continuous entertainment. You operate this CD changer with the same controls used for the radio and cassette player.

To load the CDs or operate the CD changer, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II).

Load and play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems. You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this system.

For best results when using CD-R discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use. When recording a CD-R, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players. CD-RW discs will not work in this unit.



## *Loading CDs in the Changer*

To load multiple CDs in one operation:

1. Press and hold the Load button until you hear a beep and see "LOAD" in the display, then release the button.
2. On the upper left side of the display, the disc number for an empty position will begin blinking and the green CD Loaded indicator will come on.
3. Insert the disc into the CD slot. Insert it only about halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see BUSY in the display. The CD loaded indicator turns red and blinks as the CD is loaded.
4. When LOAD appears again in the display, insert the next disc into the CD slot.

5. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. The system will then begin playing the last CD loaded.

If you are not loading CDs into all six positions, press the Load button again after the last CD has loaded. The system will begin playing the last CD loaded.

If you stop loading CDs before all six positions are filled, and you do not press the Load button, the system will wait for ten seconds, then stop the load operation and begin playing the last CD loaded.

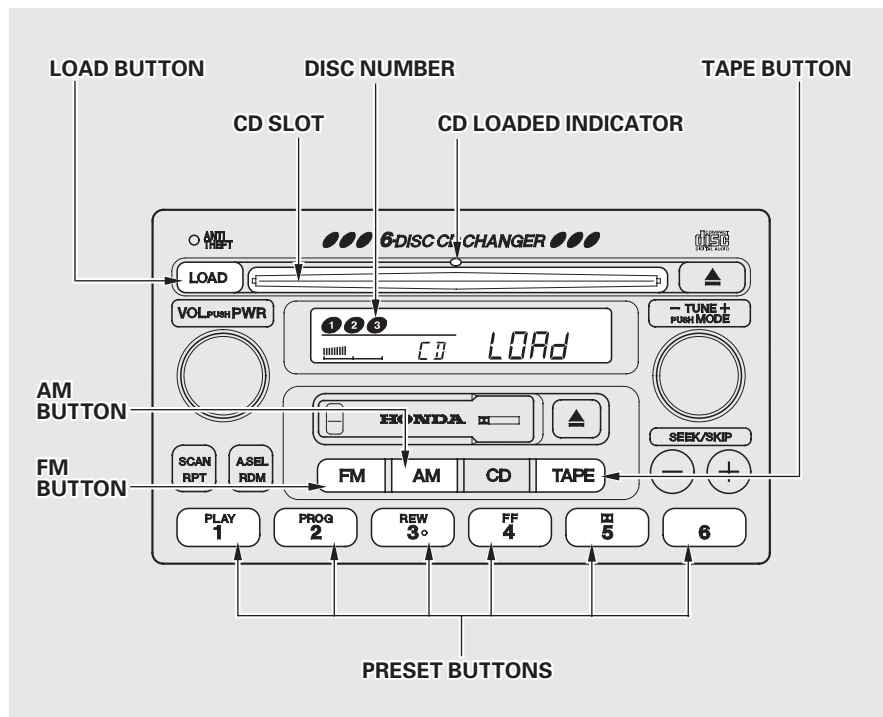
To load a single CD:

1. Press and release the Load button.
2. When the disc number for an empty position starts to blink and the green CD Loaded indicator comes on, you will see LOAD in the display, then insert the disc into the CD slot. Insert it only about halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.
3. The system will load the CD, and begin playing it.

*CONTINUED*

If you press the Load button while a CD is playing, the system will stop playing that CD and start the loading sequence. It will then play the CD just loaded.

You can also load a CD into an empty position while a CD is playing by pressing the appropriate preset button. Select an empty position (the disc number indicator is off), and press the preset button for that position (1 to 6). The system will stop playing the current CD and start the loading sequence. It will then play the CD just loaded.



**Operation**

Select the CD changer by pressing the CD button. You will see “Cd” in the display. The system will begin playing the last selected disc in the CD changer. You will see the disc and track numbers displayed.

When that disc ends, the next disc in the CD changer is loaded and played. After the last disc finishes, the system returns to disc 1.

To select a different disc, press the appropriate Preset button (1 – 6). If you select an empty position in the CD changer, the system will go into the loading sequence (see page 157 ).

You can use the SKIP buttons while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the appropriate SKIP button. You will hear a beep and the system will continue to move. Press the ⊕ button to move forward, or the ⊖ button to move backward. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you press the ⊕ button and release it, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the ⊖ button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press and release it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

**REPEAT** — To activate the Repeat feature, press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display as a reminder. The system continuously replays the current track. Press the RPT button again to turn it off. Pressing either of the SKIP buttons also turns off the repeat feature.

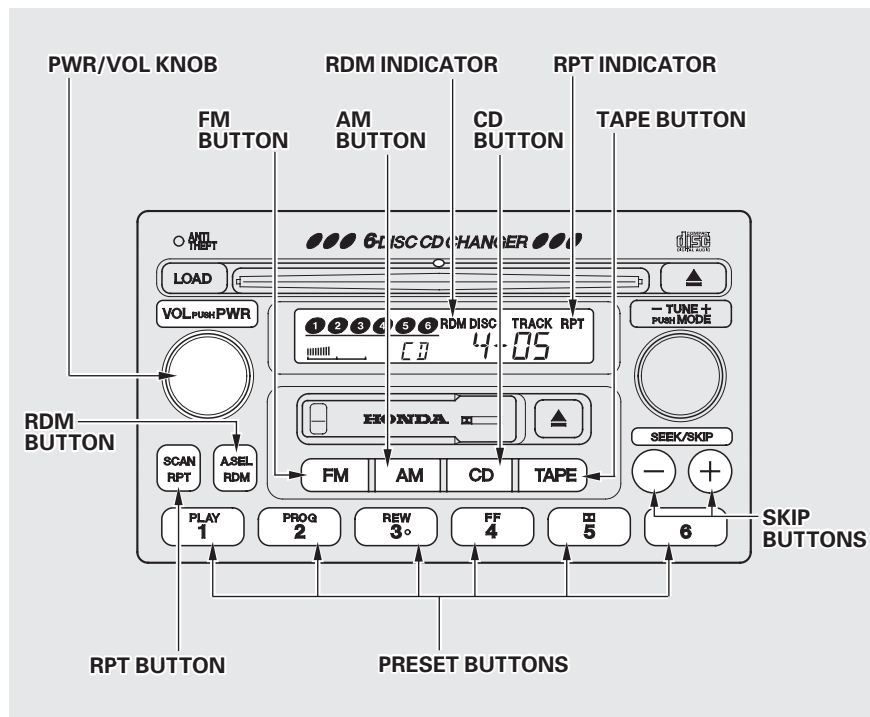
**RANDOM PLAY** — This feature, when activated, plays the tracks within a CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press the RDM button. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing the RDM button again, or you select a different CD with a preset button.

*CONTINUED*



To take the system out of CD mode, press the AM or FM button, or insert a cassette in the player. If a tape is already in the cassette player, press the TAPE button. When you return to CD mode by pressing the CD button, play will continue at the same point that it left off.

If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or the ignition switch, play will continue at the same point when you turn it back on.

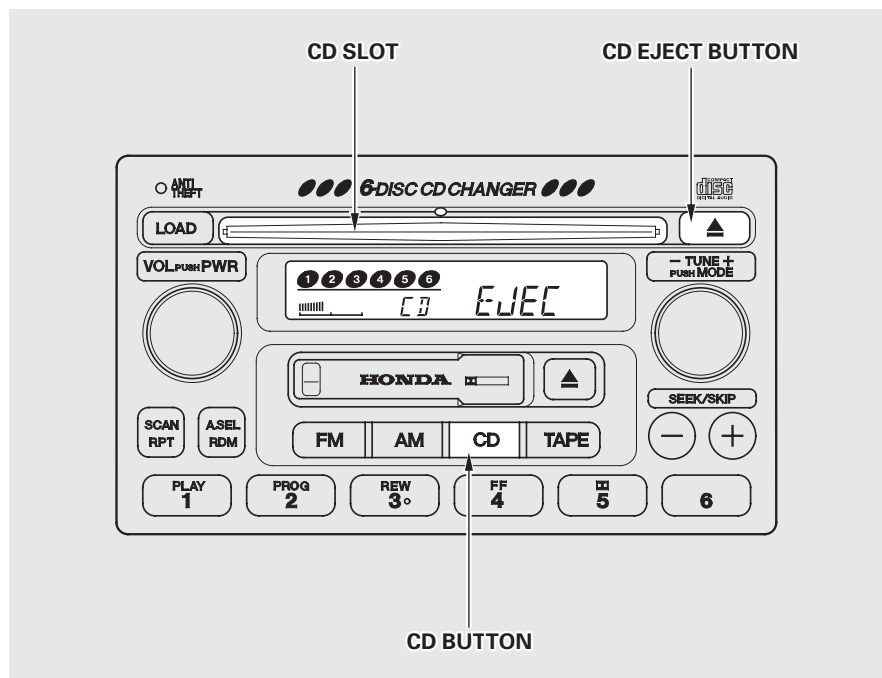


***Removing CDs from the Changer***

To remove the disc that is currently playing, press the Eject button. You will see "EJEC" in the display. When you remove the disc from the slot, the system automatically begins the Load sequence so you can load another CD in that position. If you do not load another CD, after ten seconds the system begins playing the next disc in the changer. If the changer is empty, the system selects the previous mode (AM, FM, or Tape).

If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the system will reload the disc after 15 seconds and put the CD changer in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the CD button.

To remove a different CD from the changer, first select it with the appropriate preset button. When that CD begins playing, press the Eject button.



CONTINUED

If you press the Eject button while listening to the radio or tape, or with the audio system turned off, the disc that was last selected is ejected.

After that disc is ejected, pressing the Eject button again will eject the next disc in the numerical order. By doing this six times, you can remove all the CDs from the changer.

In any mode, if you press the Eject button and hold it until you hear a beep, the system will eject all of the discs in the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off. The disc that was last selected is ejected first. You can eject up to five discs, one at a time.

### Protecting Compact Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page [175](#).

**CD Changer Error Indications**

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD changer, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the car to your Honda dealer.

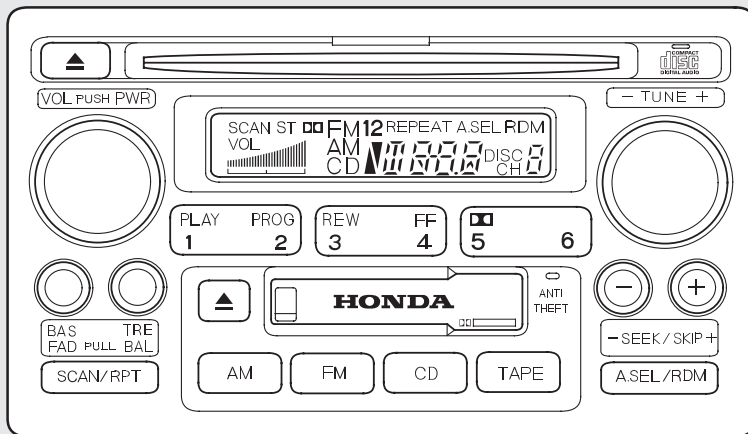
Indication	Cause	Solution
CD ISC	FOCUS Error	Press the CD eject button and pull out the CDs, check for error indication. Insert the CDs again. If the code does not disappear or the CD cannot be pulled out, consult your Honda dealer.
CD ERR	Mechanical Error	Press the CD eject button and pull out the CDs, check for error indication. Insert the CD again. If the code does not disappear or the CD cannot be pulled out, consult your Honda dealer.
CD EJECT	No CD in the CD changer.	Insert CD magazine.

# Audio System

## AM/FM/Cassette/CD Player Audio System

*SE and U.S. Value Package models*

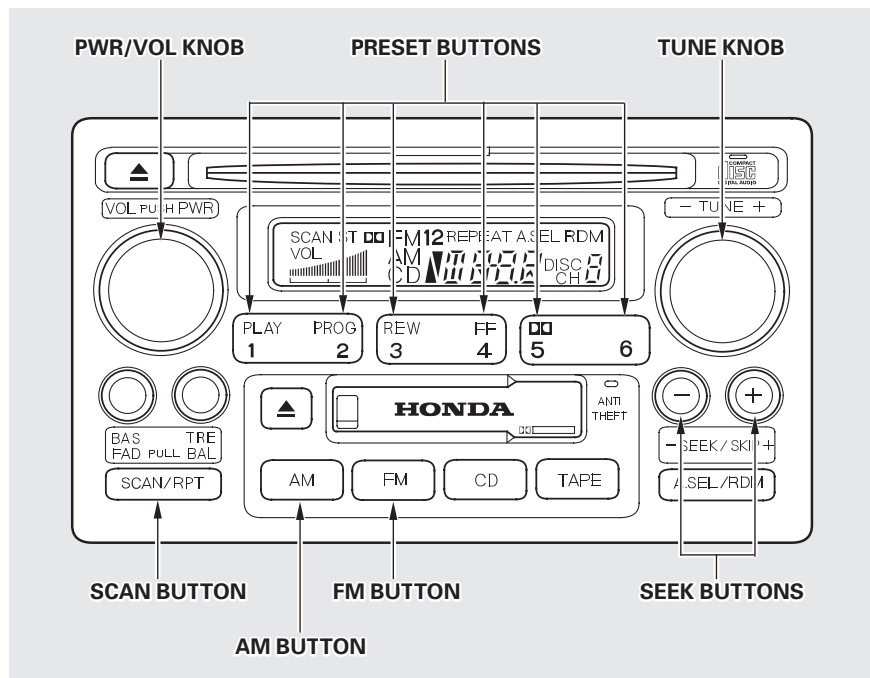
Your Honda's audio system provides clear reception on both AM and FM bands, while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favorite stations.



## Operating the Radio

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the PWR/VOL knob. Adjust the volume by turning the same knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the AM or FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.



CONTINUED

You can use any of four methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN or the Preset buttons.

**TUNE** — Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob clockwise to tune to a higher frequency, or counterclockwise to tune to a lower frequency.

**SEEK** — The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press either SEEK button (⊖ or ⊕), then release it. Depending on which SEEK button you press, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

**SCAN** — The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately five seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for five seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

**Preset** — You can store the frequencies of your favorite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

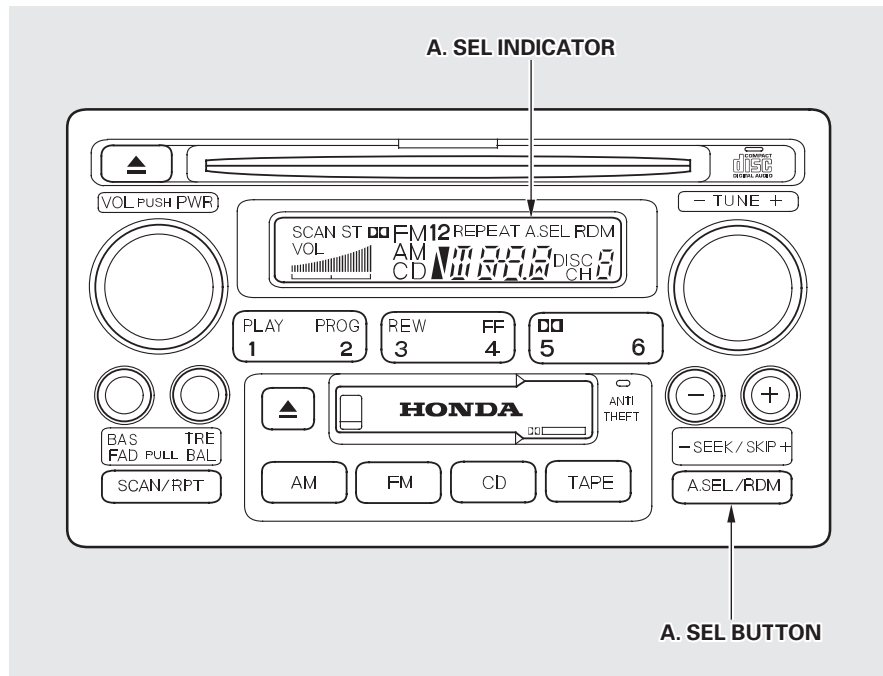
1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two frequencies with each Preset button.
2. Use the TUNE or SEEK function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the Preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve on FM.

Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it. The preset frequencies will be lost if your vehicle's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the radio fuse is removed.

**AUTO SELECT** — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the Auto Select feature to find stations in the local area.

To activate Auto Select, press the A. SEL button. A. SEL will flash in the display, and the system will go into scan mode for several seconds. It automatically scans both bands, looking for stations with strong signals. It stores the frequencies of six AM stations and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. You can then use the preset buttons to select those stations.

If you are in a remote area, Auto Select may not find six strong AM stations or twelve strong FM stations. If this happens, you will see a “0” displayed when you press any preset button that does not have a station stored.

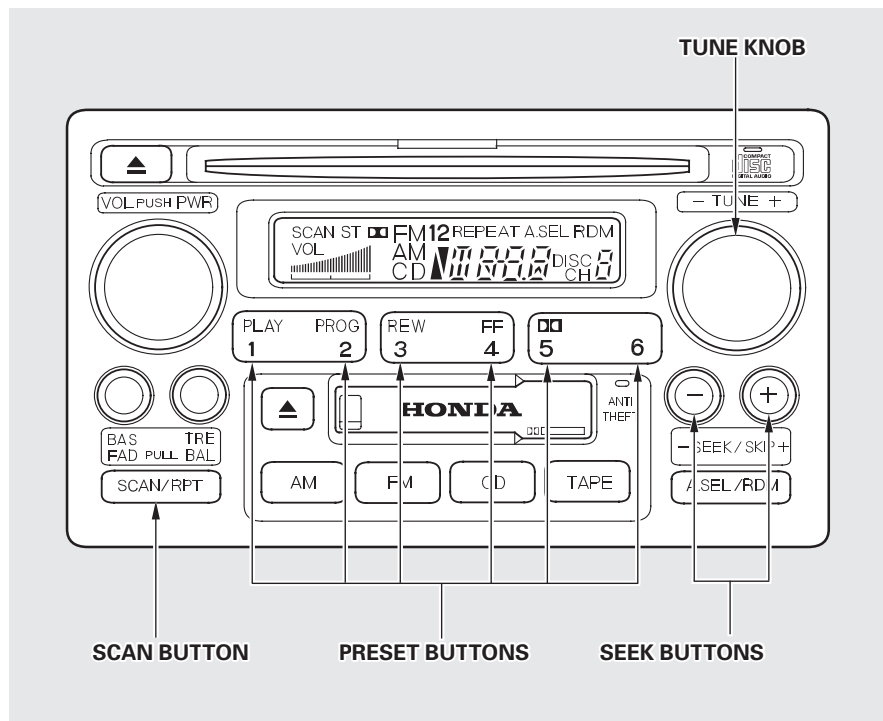


*CONTINUED*



If you do not like the stations Auto Select has stored, you can store other frequencies in the preset buttons. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to find the desired frequencies, then store them in the selected preset buttons as described previously.

Auto Select does not erase the frequencies that you preset previously. When you return home, turn off Auto Select by pressing the A. SEL button. The preset buttons will then select the frequencies you originally set.

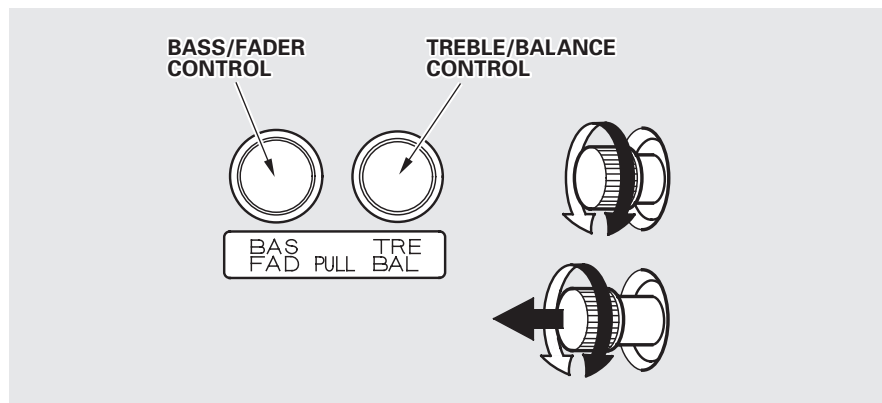


## Adjusting the Sound

**Balance/Fader** — These two controls adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. The Balance control adjusts the side-to-side strength, while the Fader control adjusts the front-to-back strength.

To adjust the fader, push on the BASS/FADER control knob to get it to pop out. Pull it out slightly farther, and adjust the front-to-back sound to your liking. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.

To adjust the balance, push on the TREBLE/BALANCE control knob to get it to pop out. Pull it out slightly farther, and adjust the side-to-side sound to your liking. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.



**Treble/Bass** — Use these controls to adjust the tone to your liking.

To adjust the Treble level, push on the TREBLE/BALANCE control knob to get it to pop out. Without pulling it out farther, turn the knob to adjust the treble level. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.

To adjust the Bass level, push on the BASS/FADER control knob to get it to pop out. Without pulling it out farther, turn the knob to adjust the bass level. Push the knob back in when you are done so you cannot change the setting by accidentally bumping it.

## Radio Frequencies

Your Honda's radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands. Those bands cover these frequencies:

AM band:

530 to 1,710 kilohertz

FM band:

87.7 to 107.9 megahertz

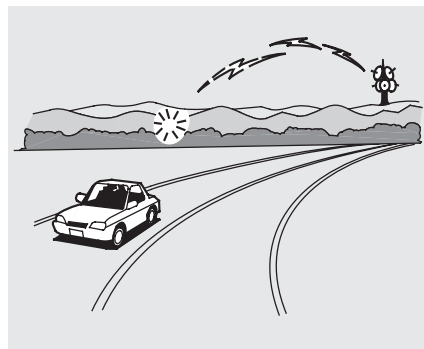
Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least ten kilohertz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 megahertz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as "FM101."

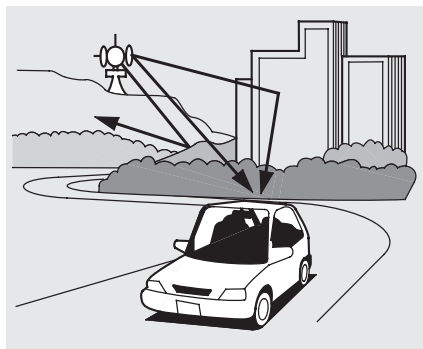
## Radio Reception

How well your Honda's radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station's transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

A radio station's signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station's signal.



Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio's reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.



Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.



Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

*As required by the FCC:  
Changes or modifications not expressly  
approved by the party responsible for  
compliance could void the user's  
authority to operate the equipment.*

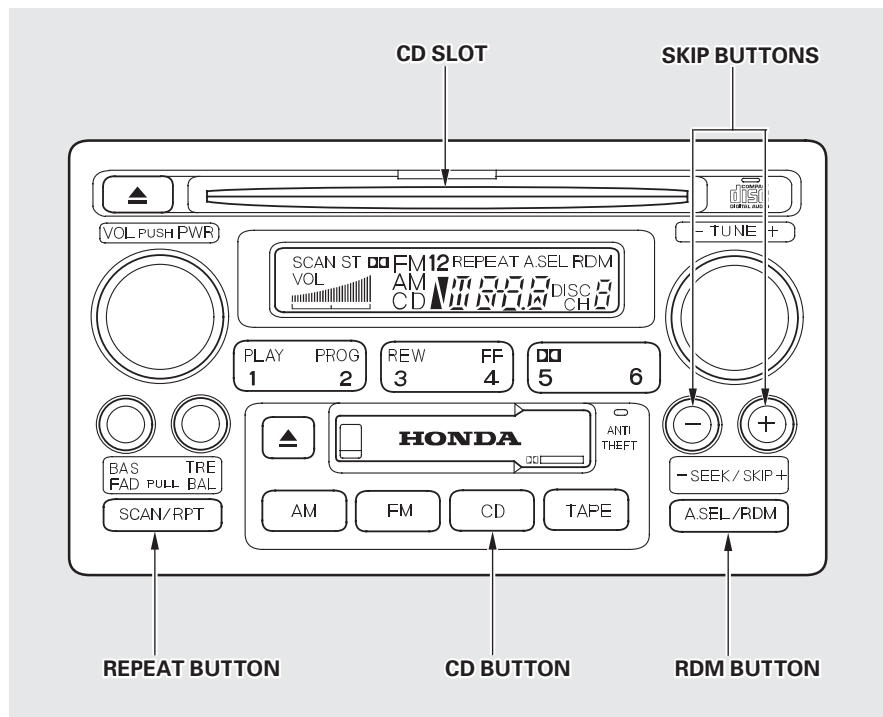
## Operating the CD Player

You operate the CD player with the same controls used for the radio.

With the system on, insert the disc into the CD slot. Push the disc in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way and begin to play. The number of the track that is playing is shown in the display.

You can also play 3-inch (8-cm) discs without using an adapter ring. In all cases, play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

For best results when using CD-R discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use. When recording a CD-R, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players. CD-RW discs will not work in this unit.



When the system reaches the end of the disc, it will return to the beginning and play that disc again.

You can switch to the radio while a CD is playing by pressing the AM or FM button. Press the CD button to return to playing the CD. The CD will begin playing where it left off.

If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or by turning off the ignition, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.

Press the eject button to remove the disc from the drive.

If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 15 seconds and put the CD player in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the CD button.

You can use the SKIP buttons while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold an appropriate SKIP button. Press the  $\oplus$  button to move forward, or the  $\ominus$  button to move backward. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you press the  $\oplus$  button and release it, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the  $\ominus$  button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press and release it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

**REPEAT** — To activate the Repeat feature, press and release the Repeat button. You will see REPEAT in the display. The system continuously replays the current track. Press the Repeat button again to turn it off.

**RANDOM PLAY** — This feature, when activated, plays the tracks on the CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press the RDM button. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing the RDM button again.

## Operating the CD Changer (Optional)

A Compact Disc changer is available from your dealer. It holds up to six discs, providing several hours of continuous entertainment. You operate this CD changer with the same controls used for the in-dash CD player.

Load the desired CD's in the magazine and load the magazine in the changer according to the instructions that came with the unit. Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

For best results when using CD-R discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use. When recording a CD-R, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players. CD-RW discs will not work in this unit.

To select the CD changer, press the CD button. The disc and track numbers will be displayed.

To select a different disc, press the appropriate preset button (1–6). If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will, after finding that slot empty, try to load the CD in the next slot. This continues until it finds a CD to load and play.

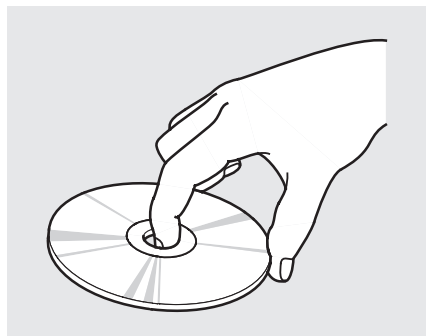
If you load a CD in the in-dash player while the changer is playing a CD, the system will stop the changer and begin playing the in-dash CD. To select the changer again, press the CD button. Play will begin where it left off. Use the CD button to switch between the player and the changer.

If you eject the in-dash CD while it is playing, the system will automatically switch to the CD changer and begin play where it left off. If there are no CDs in the changer, the display will flash. You will have to select another mode (AM or FM) with the button.

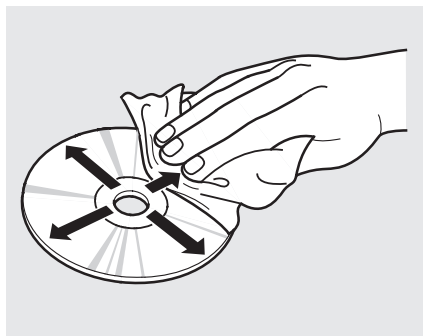
When you switch back to CD mode, the system selects the same unit (in-dash or changer) that was playing when you switched out of CD mode.

To use the SKIP, REPEAT, and RANDOM functions, refer to the in-dash player operating instructions.

## Protecting Compact Discs

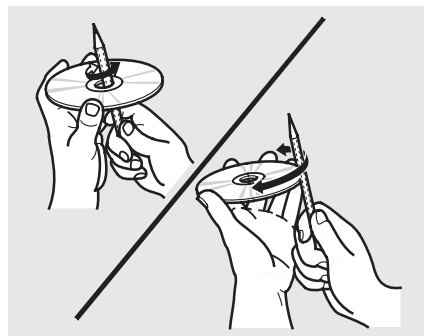


Handle a CD by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD. These, along with contamination from fingerprints liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the CD to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.



When a CD is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the center to the outside edge.



A new CD may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the CD player or the magazine.




## CD Player Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD player, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your Honda dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CD <i>PE0</i>	FOCUS/CLV Error Data Read Error Search Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check if the disc is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged.
CD <i>PE1</i>	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out or the error indication does not disappear after the disc is ejected, see your Honda dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
CD <i>PE2</i>	Control Error LSI Error	Consult your Honda dealer.

**CD Changer Error Indications**

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD changer, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your Honda dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CD E01	Disc-changer malfunction.	Consult your Honda dealer.
CD E02	Disc is in changer mechanism.	Press the magazine eject button, and insert an empty magazine.
CD E03 CD E04 CD E05	Disc-changer malfunction.	If the code disappears within a few seconds, unit is OK. If it does not, consult your Honda dealer.
CD E06	Disc-changer malfunction.	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the magazine can not be pulled out, consult your Honda dealer.
CD E07	CD magazine ejection impossible.	Press the magazine eject button. If the magazine does not eject, consult your Honda dealer.
CD ---H	High temperature.	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
CD EEE	Misconnection or disconnection of CD changer.	See your Honda dealer.
CD ---	No CD magazine in the CD changer.	Insert CD magazine.
CD 	No CD in magazine.	Insert CD in magazine.

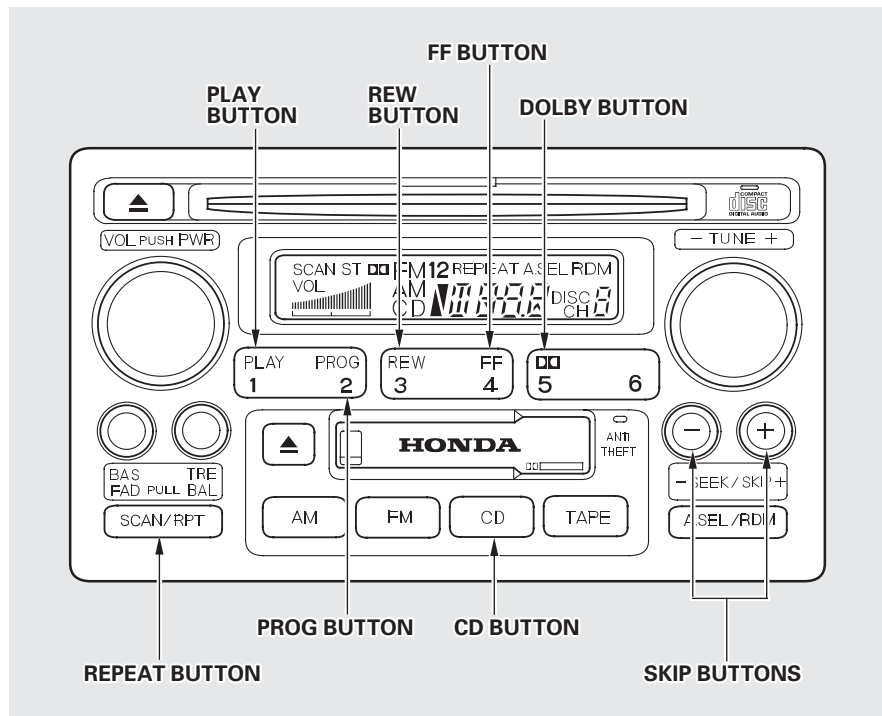
## Operating the Cassette Player

The cassette system features Dolby\* noise reduction, automatic sensing of chromium-dioxide (CrO<sub>2</sub>) tape, and auto-reverse for continuous play.

Make sure the tape opening on the cassette is facing to the right, then insert the cassette most of the way into the slot. The system will pull it in the rest of the way, and begin to play.

\* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol

are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.



The tape direction indicator will light to show you which side of the cassette is playing. The ▲ indicates the side you inserted facing upward is now playing. If you want to play the other side, press the PROG button.

Dolby noise reduction turns on when you insert a cassette. If the tape was not recorded with Dolby noise reduction, turn it off by pressing the DOLBY button.

When the system reaches the end of the tape, it will automatically reverse direction and play the other side. If you want to remove the cassette from the drive, press the EJECT button.

If you turn the system off while a tape is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or by turning off the ignition, the cassette will remain in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the tape will begin playing where it left off.

To switch to the radio or CD player while a tape is playing, press the AM, FM or CD button. To change back to the cassette player, push the TAPE button.

## **Tape Search Functions**

With a cassette playing, you can use the FF, REW, SKIP, or REPEAT function to find a desired program.

**FF/REW** — Fast Forward and Rewind move the tape rapidly. To rewind the tape, push the REW button. You will see REW in the display. To fast forward the tape, push the FF button. You will see FF displayed. Press the PLAY button to take the system out of rewind or fast forward. If the system reaches the end of the tape while in fast forward or rewind, it automatically stops that function, reverses direction, and begins to play.

*CONTINUED*

**SKIP** — The SKIP function allows you to find the beginning of a song or passage. To skip to the beginning of a song or passage currently playing, push the  $\ominus$  button. You will see REW flashing in the display as the tape rewinds. To skip to the beginning of the next song, push the  $\oplus$  button. You will see FF flashing in the display as the tape fast forwards. When the system finds the beginning of a song or passage, it goes back to PLAY.

**REPEAT** — The Repeat function continuously replays the current song or passage. Press the REPEAT button to activate it; you will see REPEAT displayed as a reminder. When the system reaches the end of the song or passage currently playing, it will automatically go into rewind. When it senses the beginning of the same song or passage, the system returns to PLAY mode. It will continue to repeat this same program until you deactivate REPEAT by pressing the button again.

The SKIP and REPEAT functions use silent periods on the tape to find the end of a song or passage. These features may not work to your satisfaction if there is almost no gap between selections, a high noise level between selections, or a silent period in the middle of a selection.

## Caring for the Cassette Player

The cassette player picks up dirt and oxides from the tape. This contamination builds up over time and causes the sound quality to degrade. To prevent this, you should clean the player after every 30 hours of use. Your dealer has a cleaning kit available.

If you do not clean the cassette player regularly, it may eventually become impossible to remove the contamination with a normal cleaning kit.

Use 100-minute or shorter cassettes. Cassettes longer than that use thinner tape that may break or jam the drive.

Look at the cassette before you insert it. If the tape is loose, tighten it by turning a hub with a pencil or your finger.

If the label is peeling off, remove it from the cassette or it could cause the cassette to jam in the player. Never try to insert a warped or damaged cassette in the player.

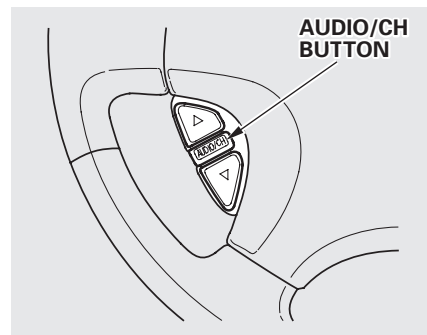
When they are not in use, store cassettes in their cases to protect them from dust and moisture. Never place cassettes where they will be exposed to direct sunlight, high heat, or high humidity. If a cassette is exposed to extreme heat or cold, let it reach a moderate temperature before inserting it in the player.

Never try to insert foreign objects into the cassette player.

*U.S. EX, Canada EX-L and all EX V-6 models*

If you see the error indication "TAPE ERR" on the display, press the TAPE EJECT button to remove the cassette from the unit. Make sure the tape is not damaged. If the cassette will not eject or the error indication stays on after the cassette ejects, take the car to your Honda dealer.

## Remote Audio Controls



### *On all EX models*

Two controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The top and bottom buttons adjust the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the proper button and hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The AUDIO/CH button has three functions, depending on whether you are listening to the radio, or playing a cassette or CD.

If you are listening to the radio, use the AUDIO/CH button to change stations. Each time you press this button, the system advances to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. You will see the number of the selected Preset button in the display. To change bands, press the AM or FM button on the audio system's front panel.

If you are playing a cassette, use the AUDIO/CH button to advance to the next selection. You will see "FF" blinking in the display when you press the AUDIO/CH button. The system fast forwards until it senses a silent period, then goes back to PLAY.

If you are playing a CD, the system skips to the beginning of the next track each time you push the AUDIO/CH button. You will see the disc and track number in the display.

**Theft Protection**

*On EX, EX V-6, and SE, and U.S. Value Package models*

Your car's audio system will disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, the user must enter a specific five-digit code in the Preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from five digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a card that lists your audio system's code number and serial number. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this Owner's Manual. If you should happen to lose the card, you must obtain the code number from your Honda dealer. To do this, you will need the system's serial number.

If your car's battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "Code" in the frequency display the next time you turn on the system. Use the Preset buttons to enter the five-digit code. If it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over or try to correct your mistake. Complete the five-digit sequence, then enter the correct code. You have ten tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in ten attempts, you must then leave the system on for one hour before trying again.

You will have to store your favorite stations in the Preset buttons after the system begins working. Your original settings were lost when power was disconnected.

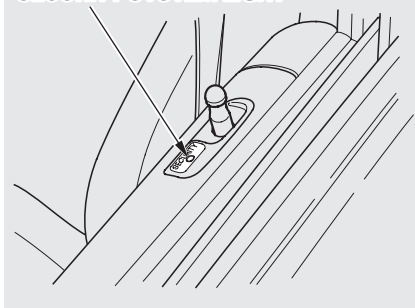


## *On EX, SE, and EX V-6 models*

The security system helps to protect your car and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and a combination of headlights, parking lights, side marker lights and taillights flashes if someone attempts to break into your car or remove the radio. This alarm continues for two minutes, then the system resets. To reset an alarming system before the two minutes have elapsed, unlock either front door with the key or the remote transmitter.

The security system sets automatically fifteen seconds after you lock the doors, hood, and trunk. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors from the outside with the key, lock tab, door lock switch, or remote transmitter. The security system light next to the driver's door lock starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.

### SECURITY SYSTEM LIGHT



Once the security system is set, opening any door (without using the key or the remote transmitter), or the hood, will cause it to alarm. It also alarms if the radio is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

With the system set, you can still open the trunk with the master key or the remote transmitter without triggering the alarm. The alarm will sound if the trunk lock is forced, or the trunk is opened with the trunk release handle.

The security system will not set if the hood, trunk, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the Door and Brake Lamp Monitor on the instrument panel (see page 58), to see if the doors and trunk are fully closed. Since it is not part of the monitor display, manually check the hood.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

*Except for DX and Value Package models in the U.S.*

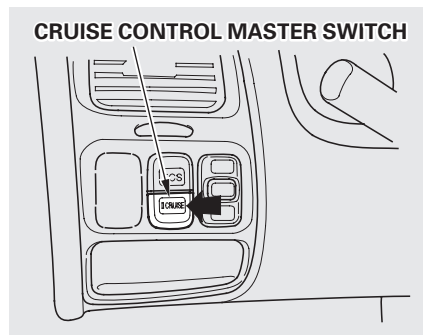
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open highways. It is not recommended for conditions such as city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather. You should have full control of the car under those conditions.

### **⚠ WARNING**

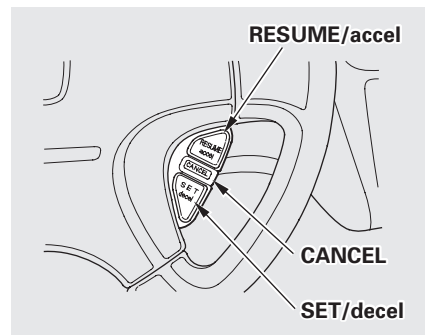
Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

## Using the Cruise Control



1. Push in the Cruise Control Master Switch to the left of the steering column. The indicator in the switch will light.
2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).



3. Press and release the SET/decel button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL light on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

*CONTINUED*

The cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down to the desired speed. This will cancel the cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RESUME/accel button. The CRUISE CONTROL light on the instrument panel comes on.

When climbing a steep hill, the automatic transmission may downshift to hold the set speed.

## Changing the Set Speed

You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RESUME/accel button. The car will accelerate. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.

- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed and press the SET/decel button.
- To increase your speed in very small amounts, tap the RESUME/accel button repeatedly. Each time you do this, your car will speed up about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

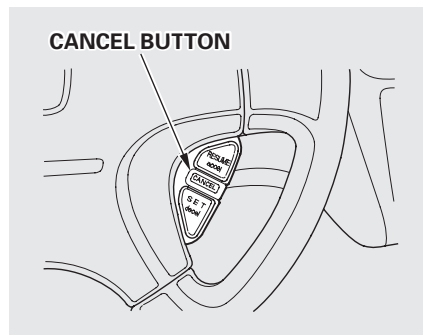
- Press and hold the SET/decel button. The vehicle will decelerate. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/decel button repeatedly. Each time you do this, your car will slow down about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

- Tap the brake or clutch pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL light on the instrument panel will go out. When the car slows to the desired speed, press the SET/decel button. The car will then maintain the desired speed.

Even with the cruise control turned on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The car will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake or clutch pedal will cause the cruise control to cancel.

## Cancelling the Cruise Control



You can cancel the cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake or clutch pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Press the Cruise Control Master Switch.

When you push the CANCEL button, or tap the brake or clutch pedal, the CRUISE CONTROL light on the instrument panel will go out and the car will begin to slow down. You can use the accelerator pedal in the normal way.

The system remembers the previously-set cruising speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 25 mph (40 km/h), then press and release the RESUME/accel button. The CRUISE CONTROL light comes on, and the car will accelerate to the same cruising speed as before.

Pressing the Cruise Control Master Switch turns the system completely off and erases the previous cruising speed from memory. To use the system again, refer to *Using the Cruise Control*.

# HomeLink Universal Transceiver

---

## *On EX V-6 model*

The HomeLink Universal Transceiver built into your car can be programmed to operate remotely-controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems. It can replace up to three remote transmitters.

## **Customer Assistance**

If you have problems with training the HomeLink Universal Transceiver, or would like information on home products that can be operated by the transmitter, call (800) 355-3515. On the Internet, go to [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).

## **Important Safety Precautions**

Always refer to the operating instructions and safety information that came with your garage door opener or other equipment you intend to operate with the HomeLink Universal Transceiver. If you do not have this information, you should contact the manufacturer of the equipment.

While training or using HomeLink, make sure you have a clear view of the garage door or gate, and that no one will be injured by its movement.

## **General Information**

If you are training HomeLink to operate a garage door or gate, it is recommended that you unplug the motor for that device during training. Repeatedly pressing the remote control button could burn out the motor.

The HomeLink transceiver stores the code in a permanent memory. There should be no need to retrain HomeLink if your car's battery goes dead or is disconnected.

If your garage door opener was manufactured before April 1982, you may not be able to program HomeLink to operate it. Garage door openers manufactured before that date do not have a safety feature that causes them to stop and reverse if an obstacle is detected during closing, increasing the risk of injury. If you have questions, call (800) 355-3515.

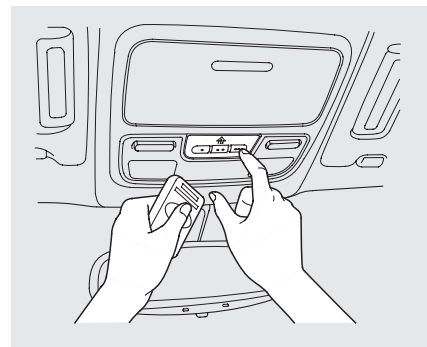
## Training HomeLink

Before you can use HomeLink to operate devices around your home, it must “learn” the proper codes. For example, to train HomeLink to open and close the garage door:

***Before you begin*** — If you just took delivery of your vehicle and have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes before training the first button. To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons on the HomeLink transceiver for about 20 seconds, until the red light flashes. Release the buttons, then proceed to Step 1.

If you are training the second or third buttons, go directly to Step 1.

1. Unplug the garage door opener motor from the house current.
2. Hold the end of the garage door opener remote control 2 to 5 inches from HomeLink. Make sure you are not blocking your view of the red light in HomeLink.



3. Select the HomeLink button you want to train.
4. Press the button on the remote control and the button on the transmitter at the same time. Hold down both buttons.

*CONTINUED*

## *Canadian Owners:*

The remote control you are training from may stop transmitting after two seconds. This is not long enough for HomeLink to learn the code. Release and press the button on the remote control every two seconds until HomeLink has learned the code.

5. The red light in HomeLink should begin flashing. It will flash slowly at first, then rapidly.
6. When the red light flashes rapidly, release both buttons. HomeLink should have learned the code from the remote control.
7. Plug in the garage door opener motor, then test the HomeLink transceiver button by pushing it. It should operate the garage door.

If the button does not work, repeat this procedure to train it again. If it still does not work, you may have a

variable or rolling code garage door opener. Test this by pressing and holding the HomeLink transceiver button you just trained. If the red light blinks for two seconds, then stays on, you have a rolling code garage door opener. You may be able to verify this with the manufacturer's documentation. Go to "Training With a Rolling Code System."

8. Repeat these steps to train the other two HomeLink buttons to operate any other remotely-controlled devices around your home (lighting, automatic gate, security system, etc.).

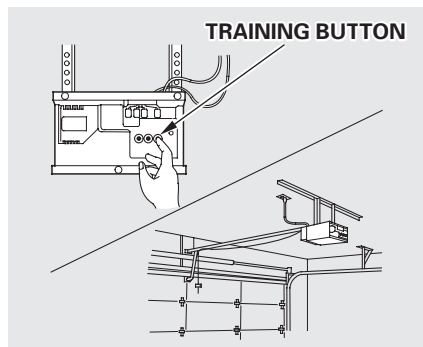
## **Training With a Rolling Code System**

For security purposes, newer garage door opening systems use a "rolling" or variable code. Information from the remote control and the garage door opener are needed before HomeLink can operate the garage door opener.

The "Training HomeLink" procedure trains HomeLink to the proper garage door opener code. The following procedure synchronizes HomeLink to the garage door opener so they send and receive the correct codes.

It may be helpful to have someone assist you with this procedure.

1. Make sure you have properly completed the "Training HomeLink" procedure.
2. Find the "Training" button on your garage door opener unit. The location will vary, depending on the manufacturer. The manufacturer's documentation may help.



3. Press the Training button on the garage door opener unit until the light next to the button comes on, then release it. The light may blink, or come on and stay on. You then have approximately 30 seconds to complete the following steps.

4. Press and hold the button on HomeLink for 3-4 seconds. (The same button you trained with the "Training HomeLink" procedure.)
5. Press and hold the HomeLink button again for 3-4 seconds. This should turn off the training light on the garage door opener unit. (Some systems may require you to press the button up to three times.)
6. Press the HomeLink button again. It should operate the garage door.



## Retraining a Button

To train an already programmed transmitter button to operate a new device:

1. Select the HomeLink button you want to train.
2. Press and hold the HomeLink button until the red light begins to flash slowly (approximately 20 seconds).
3. While continuing to hold the HomeLink button, place the remote control for the device 2 to 5 inches from HomeLink.
4. Press and hold the button on the remote control. Hold both buttons until the red light begins to flash rapidly.

5. Release both buttons. HomeLink should now be trained to operate the device.

## Erasing Codes

To erase the codes stored in all three buttons, press and hold the two outside buttons until the red light begins to flash, then release the buttons.

You should erase all three codes before selling the car.

*As required by the FCC:*

*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

*Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.*

*Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*

Before you begin driving your Honda, you should know what gasoline to use, and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your car, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period .....	194
Gasoline .....	194
Service Station Procedures .....	194
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	194
Opening the Hood .....	196
Oil Check.....	198
Engine Coolant Check .....	200
Fuel Economy .....	201
Vehicle Condition .....	201
Driving Habits.....	201
Accessories and Modifications ....	202
Carrying Cargo .....	204

## Break-in Period

Help assure your car's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 600 miles (1,000 km). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking. New brakes need to be broken-in by moderate use for the first 200 miles (300 km).
- Do not change the oil until the recommended time or mileage interval shown in the maintenance schedule.

You should follow these same recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are relined.

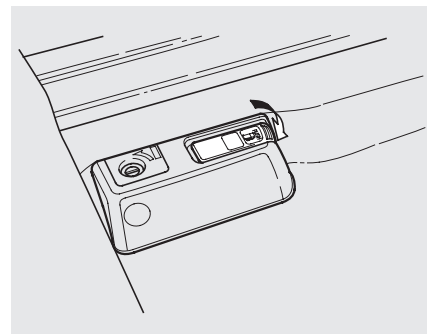
## Gasoline

Your Honda is designed to operate on unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number of 86 or higher. Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic rapping noise in the engine that can lead to mechanical damage.

We recommend gasolines containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. Using gasoline containing lead will damage your car's emissions controls. This contributes to air pollution.

In Canada, some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called MMT. If you use such gasolines, your emission control system performance may deteriorate and the Malfunction Indicator Lamp on your instrument panel may turn on. If this happens, contact your authorized Honda dealer for service.

## Filling the Fuel Tank

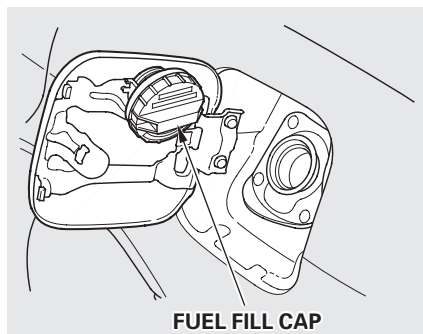


1. Because the fuel fill cap is on the driver's side of the car, park with that side closest to the service station pumps.
2. Open the fuel fill door by pushing on the handle to the left of the driver's seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

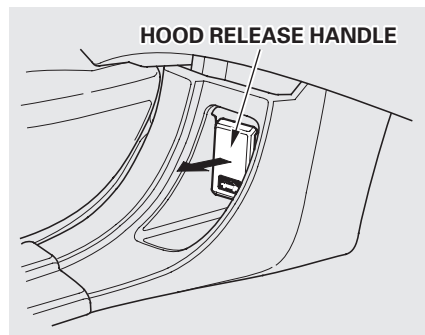
- Stop the engine and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



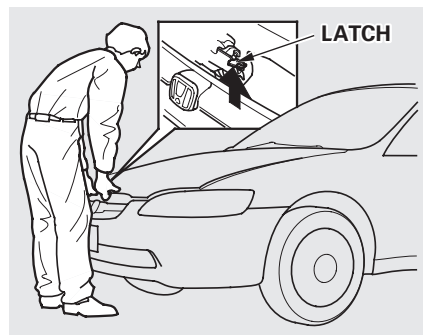
3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank escapes. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to “top off” the tank, leave some room for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.
5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on, tighten it until it clicks several times. If you do not properly tighten the cap, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp may come on (see page [327](#) ).
6. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches.

Your car has an on-board refueling vapor recovery system to help keep fuel vapors from going into the atmosphere. If the fuel nozzle keeps clicking off even though the tank is not full, there may be a problem with this system. Consult your dealer.

## Opening the Hood

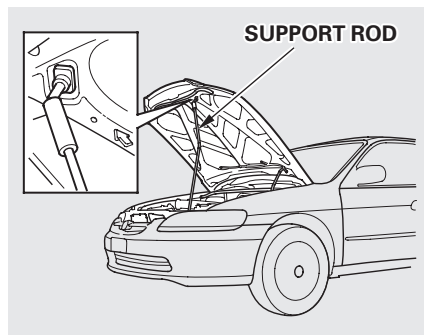


1. Shift to Park or Neutral and set the parking brake. Pull the hood release handle located under the lower left corner of the dashboard. The hood will pop up slightly.



2. Standing in front of the car, put your fingers under the front edge of the hood to the right of center. Slide your hand to the left until you feel the hood latch handle. Push this handle up until it releases the hood. Lift the hood.

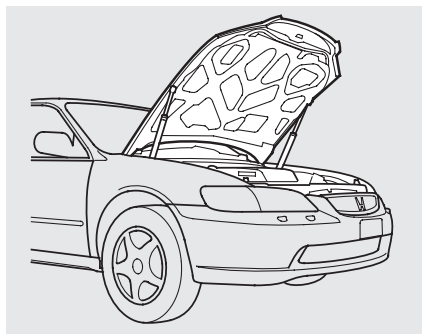
If you can open the hood without lifting the hood latch handle, or the hood latch handle moves stiffly or does not spring back as before, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated (see page [272](#) ).



### *4-cylinder models*

3. Pull the support rod out of its clip and insert the end into the hole on the front of the hood around the center.

To close the hood, lift it up slightly to remove the support rod from the hole. Put the support rod back into its holding clip. Lower the hood to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then let it drop. After closing the hood, make sure it is securely latched.



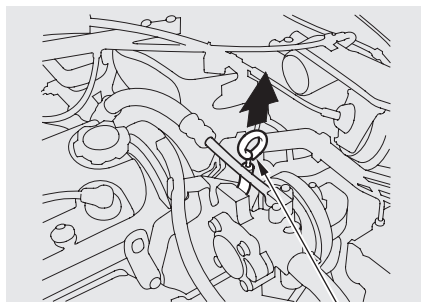
### *6-cylinder models*

3. Lift the hood up most of the way. The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

*CONTINUED*

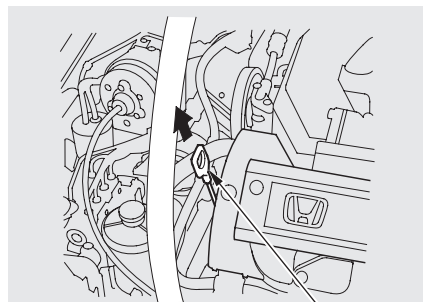
To close the hood, lower it to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then press down firmly with your hands. After closing the hood, make sure it is securely latched.

## *Oil Check*



4-cylinder models

DIPSTICK

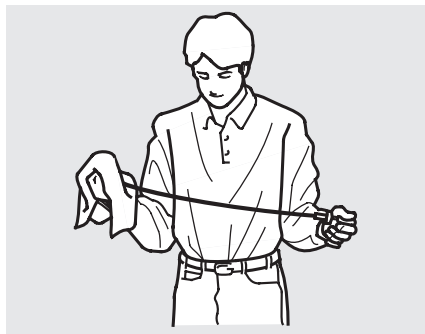


6-cylinder models

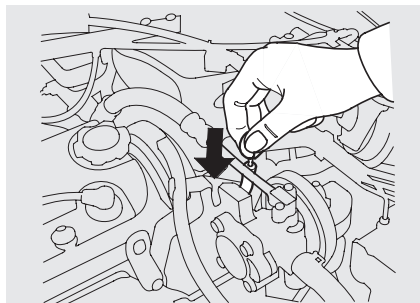
DIPSTICK

Check the engine oil level every time you fill the car with fuel. Wait a few minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1. Remove the dipstick (orange handle).

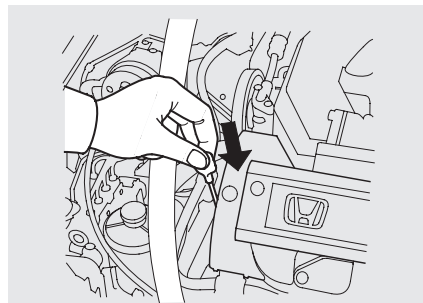


2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.



**4-cylinder models**

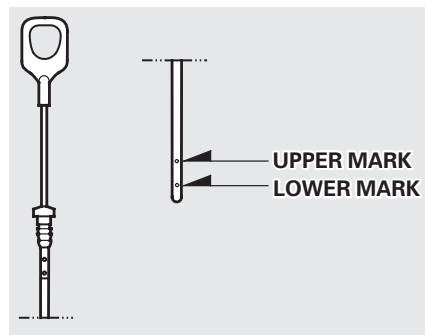
3. Insert it all the way back in its tube.



**6-cylinder models**

*CONTINUED*

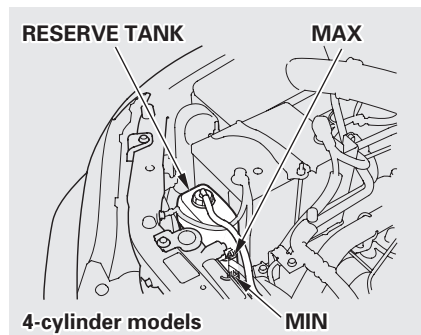




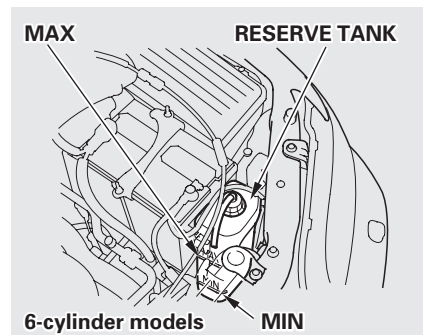
4. Remove the dipstick again and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Oil** on page [250](#).

## *Engine Coolant Check*



Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page [255](#) for information on adding the proper coolant.



Refer to **Owner Maintenance Checks** on page [247](#) for information on checking other items in your Honda.

The condition of your car and your driving habits are the two most important things that affect the fuel mileage you get.

## Vehicle Condition

Always maintain your car according to the maintenance schedule. This will keep it in top operating condition.

An important part of that maintenance is the **Owner Maintenance Checks** (see page 247 ). For example, an underinflated tire causes more “rolling resistance,” which uses fuel. It also wears out faster, so check the tire pressure at least monthly.

In winter, the build-up of snow on your car’s underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel mileage and reduces the chance of corrosion.

## Driving Habits

You can improve fuel economy by driving moderately. Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking use more fuel.

Always drive in the highest gear that allows the engine to run and accelerate smoothly.

Depending on traffic conditions, try to maintain a constant speed. Every time you slow down and speed up, your car uses extra fuel. Use the cruise control, when appropriate, to increase fuel economy.

A cold engine uses more fuel than a warm engine. It is not necessary to “warm-up” a cold engine by letting it idle for a long time. You can drive away in about a minute, no matter how cold it is outside. The engine will warm up faster, and you get better fuel economy. To cut down on the number of “cold starts,” try to combine several short trips into one.

The air conditioning puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Turn off the A/C to cut down on air conditioning use. Use the flow-through ventilation when the outside air temperature is moderate.

Modifying your car, or installing some non-Honda accessories, can make your car unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

### Accessories

Your dealer has Genuine Honda accessories that allow you to personalize your car. These accessories have been designed and approved for your car, and are covered by warranty.

Non-Honda accessories are usually designed for universal applications. Although aftermarket accessories may fit on your car, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your car's handling and stability. (See "Modifications" on page 203 for additional information.)

### WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your car's handling, stability and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your car's computer-controlled systems, such as the SRS and anti-lock brake system.

However, if electronic accessories are improperly installed, or exceed your car's electrical system capacity, they can interfere with the operation

of your car, or even cause the airbags to deploy.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper car operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 331 ).
- Have the installer contact your Honda dealer for assistance before installing any electronic accessory.

If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.

## Modifications

Do not remove any original equipment or modify your car in any way that would alter its design or operation. This could make your car unsafe and illegal to drive.

For example, do not make any modifications that would change the ride height of your car, or install wheels and tires with a different overall diameter.

Such modifications can adversely affect handling, and interfere with the operation of the car's anti-lock brakes and other systems.

In addition, any modifications that decrease ground clearance increase the chance of undercarriage parts striking a curb, speed bump, or other raised object, which could cause your airbags to deploy.

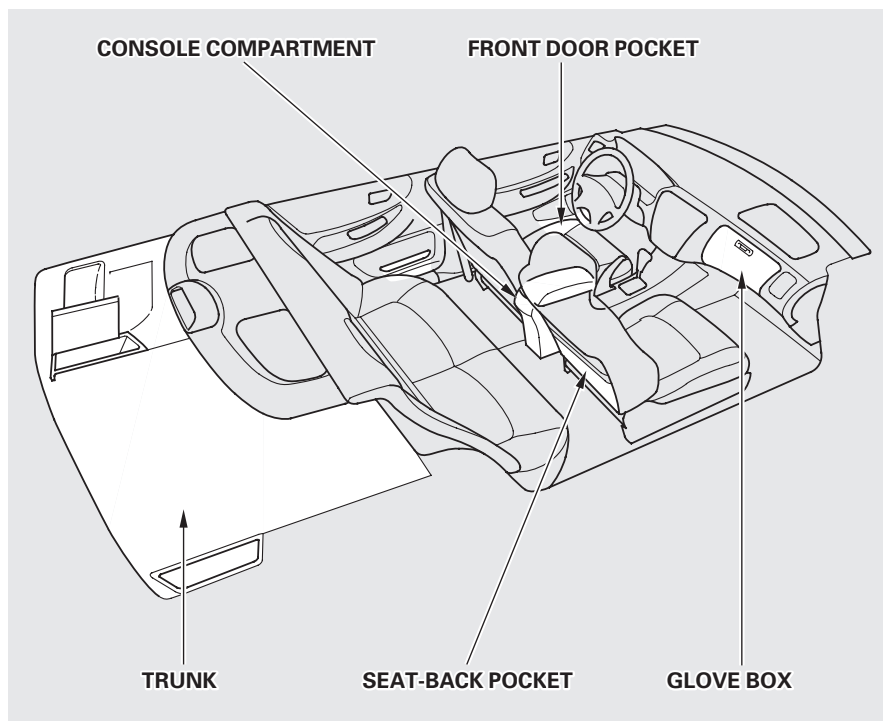
Do not modify your steering wheel or any other part of your Supplemental Restraint System. Modifications could make the system ineffective.

## Additional Safety Precaution

- ***Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.*** Any object attached to or placed on the covers marked "SRS AIRBAG," in the center of the steering wheel and on top of the dashboard, could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags. Or, if the airbags inflate, the objects could be propelled inside the car and hurt someone.

*On models equipped with side airbags*

- ***Do not attach hard objects on or near a front door.*** If a side airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the car and hurt someone.
- ***Do not place any objects over the outside edge of a front seat-back.*** Covering the outside edge of a front seat-back, with a non-Honda seat cover for example, could prevent the airbag from inflating properly.



Your car has several convenient storage areas so you can stow cargo safely.

The glove box, and the pockets in the front doors and seat-backs, are designed for small, lightweight items. The trunk is intended for larger, heavier items. In addition, the back seat can be folded down to allow you to carry more cargo or longer items.

However, carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your car's handling, stability and operation and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of cargo, be sure to read the following pages.

## Load Limit

The maximum load for your car is 850 lbs (395 kg).

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, accessories, and the tongue weight if you are towing a trailer.

To figure out how much cargo you can carry:

- Add up the weight of all occupants.
- If you are towing a trailer, add the tongue weight to the number above.
- Subtract the total from 850 lbs (395 kg).

The final number is the total weight of cargo you can carry.

## **WARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

## Carrying Items in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Do not put any items on top of the rear shelf. They can block your view and be thrown around the car during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or with the proper operation of the seats.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If the lid is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.

### Carrying Cargo in the Trunk or on a Roof Top Carrier

- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.
- If you fold down the back seat, tie down items that could be thrown about the car during a crash or sudden stop.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the trunk lid, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of carbon monoxide poisoning, follow the instructions on page [51](#).
- If you can carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed the maximum allowable weight. Please contact your Honda dealer for further information.

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the 5-speed manual and automatic transmissions. It also includes important information on parking your car, the braking system, the Traction Control System, and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer.

Preparing to Drive .....	208
Starting the Engine.....	209
Starting in Cold Weather at High Altitude .....	210
5-speed Manual Transmission .....	211
Recommended Shift Points.....	212
Engine Speed Limiter .....	212
Automatic Transmission.....	212
Shift Lever Position Indicator ..	213
Shift Lever Positions .....	213
Engine Speed Limiter .....	216
Shift Lock Release.....	216
Parking.....	218
The Braking System.....	219
Brake Wear Indicators.....	219
Brake System Design.....	220
Anti-lock Brakes .....	220
Important Safety Reminders .....	221
ABS Indicator .....	221
Traction Control System.....	222
TCS ON/OFF Switch.....	223
TCS Indicator .....	223
Driving in Bad Weather .....	225
Towing a Trailer .....	227



You should do the following checks and adjustments every day before you drive your car.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the hood and trunk are fully closed.
3. Visually check the tires. If a tire looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
4. Check that any items you may be carrying with you inside are stored properly or fastened down securely.
5. Check the adjustment of the seat (see page [82](#) ).
6. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page [93](#) ).
7. Check the adjustment of the steering wheel (see page [69](#) ).
8. Make sure the doors are securely closed and locked.
9. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page [15](#) ).
10. Turn the ignition switch ON (II). Check the indicator lights in the instrument panel.
11. Start the engine (see page [209](#) ).
12. Check the gauges and indicator lights in the instrument panel (see page [55](#) ).

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. *Manual Transmission:*  
Push the clutch pedal down all the way. START (III) does not function unless the clutch pedal is depressed.  
  
*Automatic Transmission:*  
Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position. If the engine does not start right away, do not hold the key in START (III) for more than 15 seconds at a time. Pause for at least 10 seconds before trying again.
5. If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, or starts but stalls right away, repeat step 4 with the accelerator pedal pressed half-way down. If the engine starts, release pressure on the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.
6. If the engine still does not start, press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold it there while starting in order to clear flooding. As before, keep the ignition key in the START (III) position for no more than 15 seconds. Return to step 5 if the engine does not start. If it starts, lift your foot off the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.

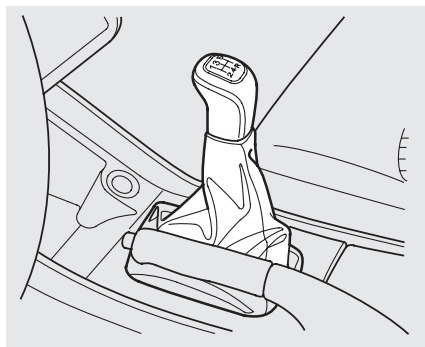
# Starting the Engine

---

## **Starting in Cold Weather at High Altitude (Above 8,000 feet/ 2,400 meters)**

An engine is harder to start in cold weather. The thinner air found at high altitude above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to the problem. Use the following procedure:

1. Turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
2. Push the accelerator pedal half-way to the floor and hold it there while starting the engine. Do not hold the ignition key in START (III) for more than 15 seconds. When the engine starts, release the accelerator pedal gradually as the engine speeds up and smooths out.
3. If the engine fails to start in step 2, push the accelerator pedal to the floor and hold it there while you try to start the engine for no more than 15 seconds. If the engine does not start, return to step 2.



The manual transmission is synchronized in all forward gears for smooth operation. It has a lockout so you cannot shift directly from Fifth to Reverse. When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually. When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Come to a full stop before you shift into Reverse. You can damage the transmission by trying to shift into Reverse with the car moving. Push down the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into Reverse, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they won't "grind."

When slowing down, you can get extra braking from the engine by shifting to a lower gear. This extra braking can help you maintain a safe speed and prevent your brakes from overheating while going down a steep hill. Before downshifting, make sure engine speed will not go into the tachometer's red zone in the lower gear.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Rapid slowing or speeding-up can cause loss of control on slippery surfaces. If you crash, you can be injured.

Use extra care when driving on slippery surfaces.

### Recommended Shift Points

Drive in the highest gear that lets the engine run and accelerate smoothly. This will give you the best fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift up	Normal acceleration
1st to 2nd	15 mph (24 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	28 mph (45 km/h)
3rd to 4th	41 mph (66 km/h)
4th to 5th	52 mph (84 km/h)

Shift up	Cruise acceleration
1st to 2nd	7 mph (11 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	22 mph (35 km/h)
3rd to 4th	33 mph (53 km/h)
4th to 5th	48 mph (77 km/h)

### Engine Speed Limiter

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the RPM below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone.

### Automatic Transmission

Your Honda's transmission has four forward speeds, and is electronically controlled for smoother shifting. It also has a "lock-up" torque converter for better fuel economy. You may feel what seems like another shift when the converter locks.

### Recommended Shift Points

Drive in the highest gear that lets the engine run and accelerate smoothly. This will give you the best fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift up	Normal acceleration
1st to 2nd	15 mph (24 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	28 mph (45 km/h)
3rd to 4th	41 mph (66 km/h)
4th to 5th	52 mph (84 km/h)

Shift up	Cruise acceleration
1st to 2nd	7 mph (11 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	22 mph (35 km/h)
3rd to 4th	33 mph (53 km/h)
4th to 5th	48 mph (77 km/h)

### Engine Speed Limiter

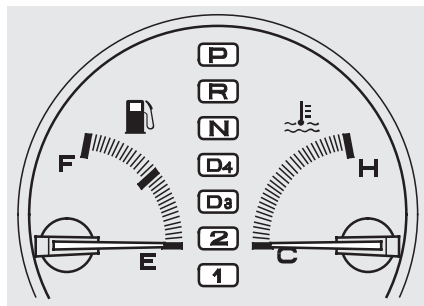
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the RPM below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone.

### Automatic Transmission

Your Honda's transmission has four forward speeds, and is electronically controlled for smoother shifting. It also has a "lock-up" torque converter for better fuel economy. You may feel what seems like another shift when the converter locks.

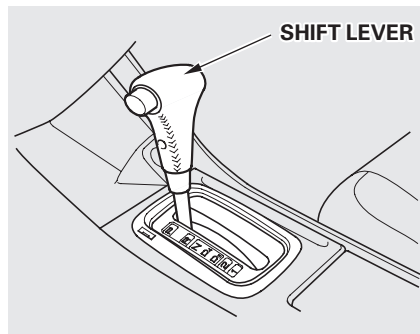
## Shift Lever Position Indicator



This indicator between the fuel gauge and temperature gauge shows which position the shift lever is in.

The “D4” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission. Avoid rapid acceleration and have the transmission checked by an authorized Honda dealer as soon as possible.

## Shift Lever Positions



The shift lever has seven positions. It must be in Park or Neutral to start the engine. When you are stopped in D4, D3, 2, 1, N or R, press firmly on the brake pedal, and keep your foot off the accelerator pedal.

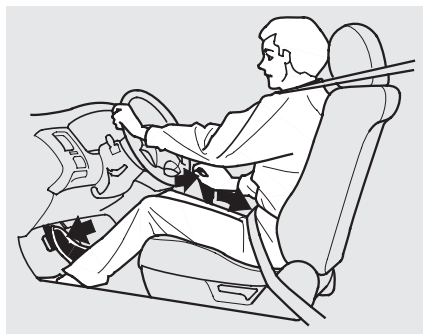
To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal and press the release button.
R to P N to R D3 to 2 2 to 1	Press the release button.
1 to 2 2 to D3 D3 to D4 D4 to N D4 to D3 N to D4 R to N	Move the lever.

*CONTINUED*

**Park (P)** — This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal. Press the release button on the side of the shift lever to move it.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see Shift Lock Release on page 216 .

You must also press the release button to shift into Park. To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.



**Reverse (R)** — To shift to Reverse from Park, see the explanation under Park. To shift to Reverse from Neutral, come to a complete stop and then shift. Press the release button before shifting into Reverse from Neutral.

**Neutral (N)** — Use Neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to Park position if you need to leave the car for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from Neutral to another gear.

**Drive (D4)** — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically selects a suitable gear for your speed and acceleration. You may notice the transmission shifting up at higher speeds when the engine is cold. This helps the engine warm up faster.



**Drive (D3)** — This position is similar to D4, except only the first three gears are selected. Use D3 when towing a trailer in hilly terrain, or to provide engine braking when going down a steep hill. D3 can also keep the transmission from cycling between third and fourth gears in stop-and-go driving.

For faster acceleration when in D3 or D4, you can get the transmission to automatically downshift by pushing the accelerator pedal to the floor. The transmission will shift down one or two gears, depending on your speed.

**Second (2)** — To shift to Second, press the release button on the side of the shift lever. This position locks the transmission in second gear. It does not downshift to first gear when you come to a stop. Second gives you more power when climbing, and increased engine braking when going down steep hills. Use second gear when starting out on a slippery surface or in deep snow. It will help reduce wheelspin.

**First (1)** — To shift from Second to First, press the release button on the side of the shift lever. With the lever in this position, the transmission locks in First gear. By upshifting and downshifting through 1, 2, D3, and D4, you can operate this transmission much like a manual transmission without a clutch pedal.

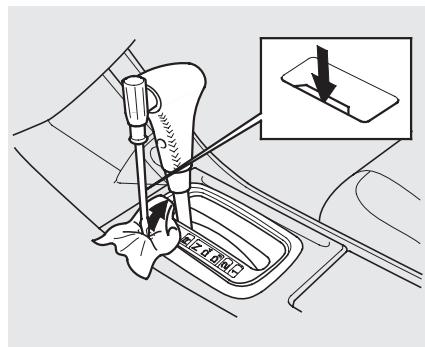
## Engine Speed Limiter

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the RPM below the red zone.

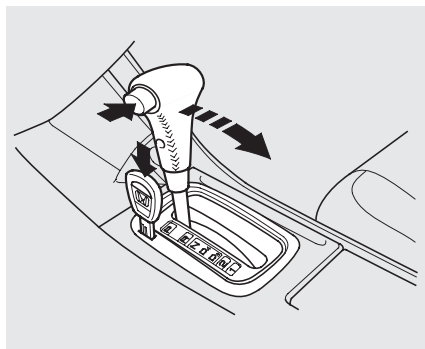
## Shift Lock Release

This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal and pressing the release button does not work.

1. Set the Parking brake.
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.



3. Put a cloth on the edge of the Shift Lock Release slot cover next to the shift lever.  
Use a small flat-tipped screwdriver or small metal plate (neither are included in the tool kit) to remove the cover. Carefully pry off the edge of the cover.
4. Insert the key in the Shift Lock Release slot.



5. Push down on the key while you press the release button on the shift lever and move the shift lever out of Park to Neutral.
6. Remove the key from the Shift Lock Release slot, then reinstall the cover. Make sure the notch on the cover is on the left side. Depress the brake pedal and restart the engine.

If you need to use the Shift Lock Release, it means your car is developing a problem. Have the car checked by your Honda dealer.

Always use the parking brake when you park your car. The indicator on the instrument panel shows that the parking brake is not fully released; it does not indicate that the parking brake is firmly set. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly or your car may roll if it is parked on an incline.

If your car has an automatic transmission, set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the car from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission — making it easier to move the shift lever out of Park when you want to drive away.

If the car is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in first gear.

If the car is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in reverse gear.

Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.

## Parking Tips

- Make sure the moonroof and the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the trunk or take them with you.
- Lock the doors with the key or the remote transmitter.  
*On EX, SE, and EX V-6 models*  
Check the indicator on the driver's door to verify that the security system is set.
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The three way catalytic converter gets very hot, and could cause these materials to catch on fire.

Your Honda is equipped with front disc brakes. The brakes on the rear wheels may be disc or drum, depending on the model. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal.

Put your foot on the brake pedal only when you intend to brake. Resting your foot on the pedal keeps the brakes applied lightly, causing them to build up heat. Heat build-up can reduce how well your brakes work. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by downshifting to a lower gear and taking your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Check your brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Since a longer distance is needed to stop with wet brakes, be extra cautious and alert in your driving.

## **Brake Wear Indicators**

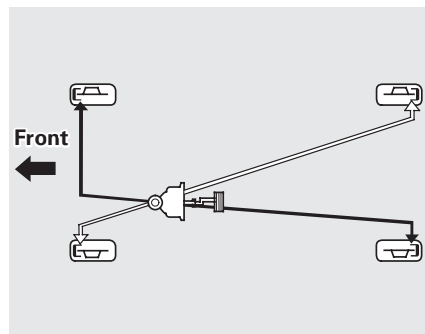
The front disc brakes on all models have audible brake wear indicators. They are also on the rear brakes of cars equipped with ABS as standard equipment.

When the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive metallic “screeching” sound when you apply the brakes. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will begin screeching all the time.

Your brakes may sometimes squeal or squeak when you apply them lightly. Do not confuse this with the brake wear indicators. They make a very audible “screeching.”

## Brake System Design

The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.



## Anti-lock Brakes

The U.S. LX with ABS and EX models, Canada SE and EX-L models, and all V6 models have an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) as standard equipment. It is optional on other models.

ABS helps to prevent the wheels from locking up and skidding during hard braking, allowing you to retain steering control.

When the front tires skid, you lose steering control; the car continues straight ahead even though you turn the steering wheel. The ABS helps to prevent lock-up and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly; much faster than a person can do it.

**You should never pump the brake pedal, this defeats the purpose of the ABS.** Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal as you steer away from the hazard. This is sometimes referred to as *"stomp and steer."*

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal, it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes.

Activation varies with the amount of traction your tires have. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before you activate the ABS. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

## ***Important Safety Reminders***

**ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the car**, it only helps with steering control during braking. You should always maintain a safe following distance from other vehicles.

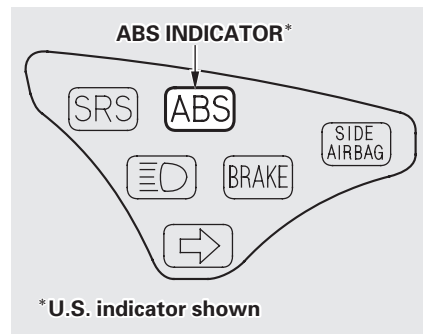
**ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly**, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe, prudent speed for the road and weather conditions.

**ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability.** Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your car to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

**A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop** on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or

snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock. Slow down and allow a greater distance between vehicles under those conditions.

## ***ABS Indicator***



The ABS is self-checking. If anything goes wrong, the ABS indicator on the instrument panel comes on (see [page 57](#)). This means the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system without anti-

lock, providing normal stopping ability. You should have the dealer inspect your car as soon as possible.

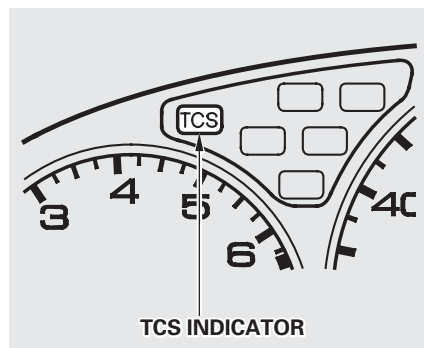
*On U.S. LX V-6 and all EX V-6 models*  
The TCS indicator will come on along with the ABS indicator.

## *On LX V-6 and EX V-6 models*

Your Honda is equipped with a Traction Control System (TCS) to assist you in maintaining traction while driving slowly on loose or slippery surfaces. The TCS assists only in low-speed, low-traction conditions; up to approximately 18 mph (30 km/h).

TCS monitors the speed of all four wheels. When it senses a front wheel losing traction, it applies braking to that wheel. The TCS indicator flashes when this occurs.

Driving with TCS requires no special skills or technique. The TCS does not control your vehicle's whole braking system and cannot prevent skidding if you enter a corner too fast. It is still your responsibility to drive at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.



When starting out or driving at low speeds on a loose or slippery road surface, you may notice that the vehicle does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. This is a sign TCS is activating. You will see the TCS indicator light flash.

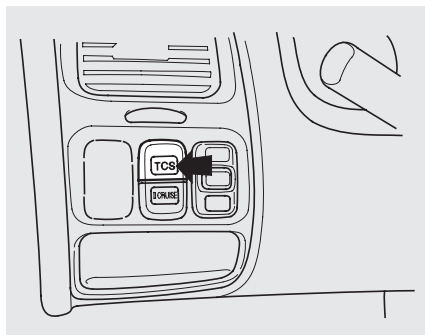
You should still install winter tires on your vehicle during the winter. Make sure to use the same size originally supplied with vehicle. Exercise the same caution in winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with TCS.

Driving with the compact spare tire installed (see page 312 ) may activate the TCS. You should turn off the system.

If the brakes overheat while TCS is activating, the TCS indicator will stop flashing and stay on temporarily. This indicates that TCS has turned off. After the brakes have cooled down (usually for about 10 minutes), TCS will turn back on and the indicator will turn off.



## TCS ON/OFF Switch



This switch is under the side vent. It lets you turn the Traction Control System on and off. You cannot turn off the TCS while the TCS indicator light is flashing.

Deactivate the system by pressing the TCS On/Off switch. The TCS indicator light comes on as a reminder. Pressing the switch again turns the system back on.

The Traction Control System turns on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## TCS Indicator

The TCS indicator comes on or flashes under the following conditions:

- When you turn the ignition switch to ON (II).
- When you manually turn off TCS.
- It flashes when TCS is regulating wheelspin.
- If the system's diagnostics senses a problem with TCS, the indicator will come on and stay on.
- If the brakes overheat, the indicator will come on.

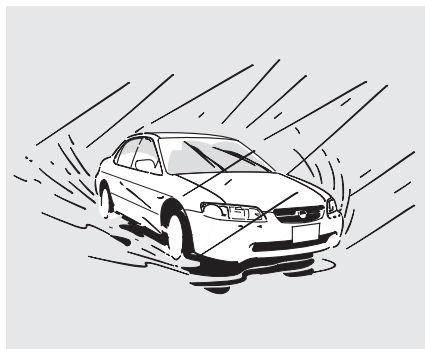
*CONTINUED*

If the TCS indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe and turn off the engine. Reset the system by re-starting the engine, and watch the TCS indicator. If the indicator remains on, or comes back on while driving, have the TCS inspected by your Honda dealer. You can still drive the vehicle without TCS.

The TCS indicator may occasionally come on for one or two seconds and then go out. This is normal.

This indicator will come on along with the ABS indicator if there is a problem in the anti-lock brake system (see **ABS Indicator** on page [221](#) ).

If the TCS indicator comes on along with the Brake System indicator, it indicates a problem in the brake system (see **Brake System Indicator** on page [57](#) ).



Rain, fog, and snow conditions require a different driving technique because of reduced traction and visibility. Keep your car well-maintained and exercise greater caution when you need to drive in bad weather. The cruise control should not be used in these conditions.

**Driving Technique** — Always drive slower than you would in dry weather. It takes your car longer to react, even in conditions that may seem just barely damp. Apply smooth, even pressure to all the controls. Abrupt steering wheel movements or sudden, hard application of the brakes can cause loss of control in wet weather. Be extra cautious for the first few miles (kilometers) of driving while you adjust to the change in driving conditions. This is especially true in snow. A person can forget some snow-driving techniques during the summer months. Practice is needed to relearn those skills.

Exercise extra caution when driving in rain after a long dry spell. After months of dry weather, the first rains bring oil to the surface of the roadway, making it slippery.

*CONTINUED*

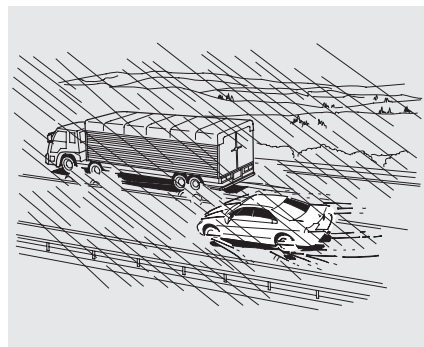
**Visibility** — Being able to see clearly in all directions and being visible to other drivers are important in all weather conditions. This is more difficult in bad weather. To be seen more clearly during daylight hours, turn on your headlights.

Inspect your windshield wipers and washers frequently. Keep the windshield washer reservoir full of the proper fluid. Have the windshield wiper blades replaced if they start to streak the windshield or leave parts unwiped. Use the defrosters and air conditioning to keep the windows from fogging up on the inside (see page [109](#)).

**Traction** — Check your tires frequently for wear and proper pressure. Both are important in preventing “hydroplaning” (loss of traction on a wet surface). In the winter, mount snow tires on all four wheels for the best handling.

Watch road conditions carefully, they can change from moment to moment. Wet leaves can be as slippery as ice. “Clear” roads can have patches of ice. Driving conditions can be very hazardous when the outside temperature is near freezing. The road surface can become covered with areas of water puddles mixed with areas of ice, so your traction can change without warning.

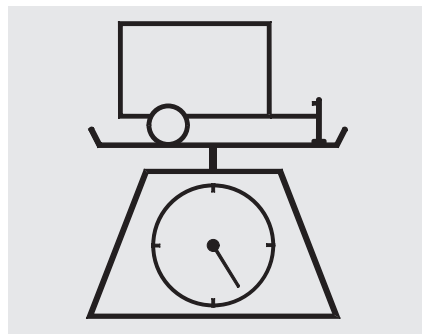
Be careful when downshifting. If traction is low, you can lock up the drive wheels for a moment and cause a skid.



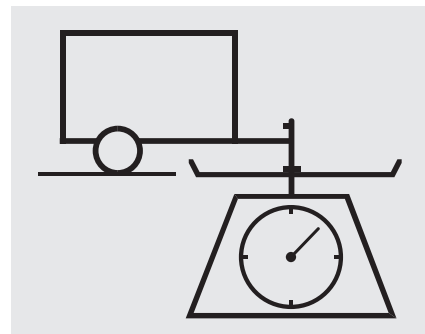
Be very cautious when passing, or being passed by other vehicles. The spray from large vehicles reduces your visibility, and the wind buffeting can cause you to lose control.

Your Honda has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their cargo. You can use it to tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

### Load Limits



- **Total Trailer Weight:** The total weight of the trailer and everything loaded in it must not exceed 1,000 lbs (450 kg). Towing a load that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle's handling and performance. It can also damage the engine and drivetrain.



- **Tongue Load:** The weight that the tongue of a fully-loaded trailer puts on the hitch should be approximately 10 percent of the trailer weight. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway. Too much tongue load reduces front-tire traction and steering control.

To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60 percent of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40 percent toward the rear, then re-adjust the load as needed.

- **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):**

The total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all cargo, and the tongue load must not exceed:

*4-cylinder models:*

(U.S. DX, LX, Value  
Package and all SE models)  
4,035 lbs (1,830 kg)  
(EX)  
4,080 lbs (1,850 kg)

*6-cylinder models:*

4,255 lbs (1,930 kg)

- **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):**

The total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all cargo, and the tongue load must not exceed:

*4-cylinder models:*

(U.S. DX, LX, Value  
Package and all SE models)  
2,180 lbs (990 kg)  
on the front axle  
1,920 lbs (870 kg)  
on the rear axle

(EX)

2,205 lbs (1000 kg)  
on the front axle  
1,940 lbs (880 kg)  
on the rear axle

*6-cylinder models:*

2,315 lbs (1,050 kg)  
on the front axle  
1,960 lbs (890 kg)  
on the rear axle

## **WARNING**

Exceeding load limits or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

## Checking Loads

The best way to confirm that vehicle and trailer weights are within limits is to have them checked at a public scale.

Using a suitable scale or a special tongue load gauge, check the tongue load the first time you set up a towing combination (a fully-loaded vehicle and trailer), then recheck the tongue load whenever the conditions change.

## Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing can require a variety of equipment, depending on the size of your trailer, how it will be used, and how much load you are towing.

Discuss your needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and follow the guidelines in the rest of this section. Also make sure that all equipment is properly installed and that it meets federal, state, province, and local regulations.

### *Hitches*

Any hitch used on your vehicle must be properly bolted to the underbody.

### *Safety Chains*

Always use safety chains. Make sure they are secured to both the trailer and hitch, and that they cross under the tongue so they can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.

### *Trailer Brakes*

Honda recommends that any trailer having a total weight of 1,000 lbs (450 kg) or more be equipped with its own electric or surge-type brakes.

If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

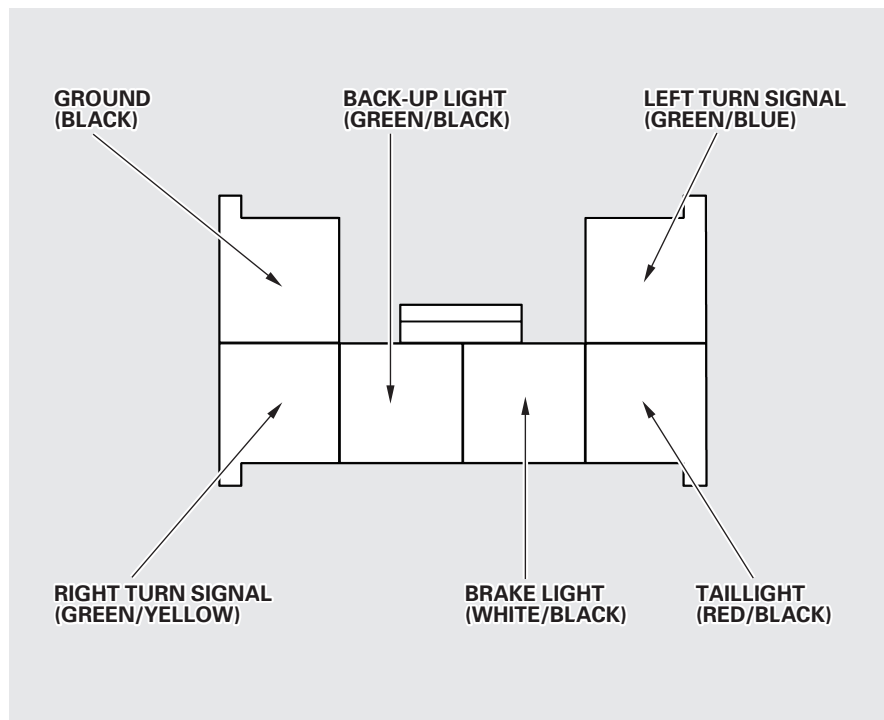
# Towing a Trailer

## Trailer Lights

Your vehicle has a trailer lighting connector in the trunk. Refer to the drawing in this page for the wiring color code and purpose of each pin.

If you use a converter, you can get the connector and pins that mate with the connector in your vehicle from your Honda dealer.

Since lighting and wiring vary in trailer type and brand, you should also have a qualified mechanic install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer.





## ***Additional Trailer Equipment***

Many states and Canadian provinces require special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if they don't, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

Ask your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

## **Pre-Tow Checklist**

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the tires, brakes, suspension, and cooling system are in good operating condition.
- All weights and loads are within limits (see pages [227](#) and [228](#) ).
- The hitch, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items on and in the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.
- The lights and brakes on your vehicle and the trailer are working properly.

- Your vehicle tires and spare are properly inflated (see page [285](#) ), and the trailer tires and spare are inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.

## **Driving Safely With a Trailer**

The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving maneuvers before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines discussed below.

### ***Towing Speeds and Gears***

Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers. If you have an automatic transmission, use D4 position when towing a trailer on level roads. D3 is the proper shift lever position to use when towing a trailer in hilly terrain. (See “*Driving on Hills*” in the next column for additional gear information.)

### ***Making Turns and Braking***

Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses. Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

### ***Driving on Hills***

When climbing hills, closely watch your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

If the automatic transmission shifts frequently between 3rd and 4th gears while going up a hill, shift to D3.

If you must stop when facing uphill, use the foot brake or parking brake. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator, as this can cause the automatic transmission to overheat.

When driving down hills, reduce your speed and shift down to 2nd gear. Do not “ride” the brakes, and remember it will take longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.

## ***Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting***

Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause trailer swaying. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.

## ***Backing Up***

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the *bottom* of the steering wheel; then turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left, and turn the wheel right to move the trailer to the right.

## ***Parking***

Follow all normal precautions when parking, including firmly setting the parking brake and putting the transmission in Park (automatic) or in 1st or Reverse (manual). Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.

This section explains why it is important to keep your car well maintained and to follow basic maintenance safety precautions.

This section also includes Maintenance Schedules for normal driving and severe driving conditions, a Maintenance Record, and instructions for simple maintenance tasks you may want to take care of yourself.

If you have the skills and tools to perform more complex maintenance tasks on your Honda, you may want to purchase the Service Manual. See page 359 for information on how to obtain a copy, or see your Honda dealer.

Maintenance Safety .....	236	Hood Latch .....	272
Important Safety Precautions ..	237	Spark Plugs .....	272
Maintenance Schedule .....	238	Replacement .....	272
Required Maintenance Record ...	245	Specifications .....	273
Owner Maintenance Checks .....	247	Battery .....	276
Fluid Locations .....	248	Wiper Blades .....	279
Engine Oil .....	250	Air Conditioning System .....	281
Adding Oil .....	250	Dust and Pollen Filter .....	282
Recommended Oil .....	250	Drive Belts .....	282
Synthetic Oil .....	251	Timing Belt .....	283
Additives .....	252	Tires .....	283
Changing the Oil and Filter .....	252	Inflation .....	284
Cooling System .....	255	Inspection .....	286
Adding Engine Coolant .....	255	Maintenance .....	286
Replacing Engine Coolant .....	257	Tire Rotation .....	287
Windshield Washers .....	262	Replacing Tires and Wheels ....	287
Transmission Fluid .....	263	Wheels and Tires .....	288
Automatic		Winter Driving .....	289
Transmission .....	263	Snow Tires .....	289
5-speed Manual		Tire Chains .....	289
Transmission .....	265	Lights .....	290
Brake and Clutch Fluid .....	267	Replacing Bulbs .....	292
Brake System .....	267	Storing Your Car .....	301
Clutch System .....	268		
Power Steering .....	268		
Air Cleaner Element .....	269		

Regularly maintaining your car is the best way to protect your investment. Proper maintenance is essential to your safety and the safety of your passengers. It will also reward you with more economical, trouble-free driving and help reduce air pollution.

### **WARNING**

Improperly maintaining this car or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

This section includes instructions for simple maintenance tasks, such as checking and adding oil. Any service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a Honda technician or other qualified mechanic.

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

### **WARNING**

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

**Important Safety Precautions**

Before you begin any maintenance, make sure your car is parked on level ground and that the parking brake is set. Also, be sure the engine is off. This will help to eliminate several potential hazards:

- **Carbon monoxide poisoning from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool before touching any parts.
- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

Read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, be careful when working around gasoline or batteries. Use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline, to clean parts. Keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.

You should wear eye protection and protective clothing when working near the battery or when using compressed air.

The Maintenance Schedule specifies how often you should have your car serviced and what things need attention. It is essential that you have your car serviced as scheduled to retain its high level of safety, dependability, and emissions control performance.

The services and time or distance intervals shown in the maintenance schedule assume you will use your vehicle as normal transportation for passengers and their possessions. You should also follow these recommendations:

- Avoid exceeding your car's load limit. This puts excess stress on the engine, brakes, and many other parts of your car. The load limit is shown on the label on the driver's doorjamb.
- Operate your car on reasonable roads within the legal speed limit.
- Drive your car regularly over a distance of several miles (kilometers).
- Always use unleaded gasoline with the proper octane rating (see page [194](#)).

## **Which Schedule to Follow:**

Service your car according to the time and mileage periods on one of the Maintenance Schedules on the following pages. Select the schedule for "Severe Conditions" if most of your driving is done under one or more of the conditions listed on that page. Otherwise, follow the schedule for "Normal Conditions."

Your authorized Honda dealer knows your car best and can provide competent, efficient service. However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Maintenance may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Keep all the receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out the Maintenance Record. Check your warranty booklet for more information.

We recommend the use of genuine Honda parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance done. These are manufactured to the same high-quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

U.S. Vehicles:

**Maintenance, replacement or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individual using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.**

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, Honda recommends that all maintenance services be performed at the recommended time or mileage period to ensure long-term reliability.



Service at the indicated distance or time — whichever comes first.	miles x 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
	km x 1,000	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Replace engine oil	Replace every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 1 year								
Replace engine oil filter		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check engine oil and coolant	Check oil and coolant at each fuel stop								
Replace air cleaner element			●		●		●		●
Inspect valve clearance	Adjust only if noisy								●
Replace spark plugs								●	
Replace timing belt* <sup>1</sup> , balancer belt* <sup>1,*2</sup> , and inspect water pump								●	
Inspect and adjust drive belts			●		●		●		●
Inspect idle speed								●	
Replace engine coolant	120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 10 years, then every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 5 years								
Replace transmission fluid	MT	Every 120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 6 years							
	AT	120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 6 years, then every 90,000 miles (144,000 km) or 5 years							
Inspect front and rear brakes		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years (independent of mileage)								
Check parking brake adjustment		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace dust and pollen filter			●		●		●		●
Rotate tires (Check tire inflation and condition at least once per month)	Rotate tires every 7,500 miles (12,000 km)								
Visually inspect the following items:									
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots									
Suspension components, driveshaft boots									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
All fluid levels and condition of fluids									
Cooling system hoses and connections									
<sup>1</sup> Exhaust system, <sup>2</sup> fuel lines and connections									

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty, last column, page 239.

\* 1 : See timing belt on page 283 to determine need for replacement.

\* 2 : Balancer belt applies to 4-cylinder models only.

## U.S. Owners

Follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule if the severe driving conditions specified in the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule do not apply.

NOTE: If you only *OCCASIONALLY* drive under a “severe” condition, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

## Canadian Owners

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time, whichever comes first. Do the items in **A, B, C, D** as required for each distance/time interval.

**U.S. Owners** — Refer to page 240 to determine which schedule to use.

**Canadian Owners** — Use the Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions.

7,500 mi/12,000 km	Do items in A.
15,000 mi/24,000 km/1 yr	Do items in A, B.
22,500 mi/36,000 km	Do items in A.
30,000 mi/48,000 km/2 yrs	Do items in A, B, C.
37,500 mi/60,000 km	Do items in A, B.
3 yrs (independent of mileage)	Do item in D.
45,000 mi/72,000 km/3 yrs	Do items in A, B.
52,500 mi/84,000 km	Do items in A.
60,000 mi/96,000 km/4 yrs	Do items in A, B, C.
67,500 mi/108,000 km	Do items in A.
75,000 mi/120,000 km/5 yrs	Do items in A, B.
82,500 mi/132,000 km	Do items in A.
6 yrs (independent of mileage)	Do item in D.
90,000 mi/144,000 km/6 yrs	Do items in A, B, C.
97,500 mi/156,000 km	Do items in A.
105,000 mi/168,000 km/7 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace timing belt, balancer belt*, inspect water pump. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect valve clearance. <input type="checkbox"/> Check idle speed. <input type="checkbox"/> Replace spark plugs. Do items in A, B.
112,500 mi/180,000 km	Do items in A.
120,000 mi/192,000 km/8 yrs	Do items in A, B, C.
120,000 mi/192,000 km/10 yrs, then replace every 60,000 mi/96,000 km/5yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine coolant
Every 120,000 mi/192,000 km/6 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace manual transmission fluid
120,000 mi/192,000 km/6yrs then replace every 90,000 mi/144,000 km/5yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace automatic transmission fluid

<b>A</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine oil. <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires (follow pattern on page 287 ).
<b>B</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine oil filter. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect front and rear brakes. <input type="checkbox"/> Check parking brake adjustment. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect tie rod ends, steering gear box and boots. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect suspension components. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect driveshaft boots. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect brake hoses and lines (including ABS). <input type="checkbox"/> Check all fluid levels, condition of fluids, and check for leaks. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect cooling system hoses and connections. <input type="checkbox"/> * Inspect exhaust system. <input type="checkbox"/> * Inspect fuel lines and connections.
<b>C</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace air cleaner element. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and adjust drive belts. <input type="checkbox"/> Replace dust and pollen filter.
<b>D</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace brake fluid every 3 years. (independent of mileage)

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty, last column, page 239.

\* 1 : Balancer belt applies to 4-cylinder models only.

#### NOTE:

- Check engine oil and coolant at each fuel stop.
- Check and adjust valve clearance, cold engine, only if noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or time — whichever comes first.	miles x 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
	km x 1,000	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Replace engine oil and oil filter	Replace every 3,750 miles (6,000 km) or 6 months								
Check engine oil and coolant	Check oil and coolant at each fuel stop								
Clean (○) or replace (●) air cleaner element Use normal schedule except in dusty conditons	○	●	○	●	○	●	○	●	
Inspect valve clearance	Adjust only if noisy							●	
Replace spark plugs								●	
*Replace timing belt* <sup>1</sup> , balancer belt* <sup>1,*2</sup> , and inspect water pump								●	
Inspect and adjust drive belts		●		●		●		●	
Inspect idle speed								●	
Replace engine coolant	120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 10 years, then every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 5 years								
Replace transmission fluid	MT	Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 3 years							
	AT	60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 3 years, then every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 2 years							
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 6 months								
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years (independent of mileage)								
Check parking brake adjustment	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace dust and pollen filter* <sup>3</sup>		●		●		●			●
Lubricate all hinges, locks and latches	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Rotate tires (Check tire inflation and condition at least once per month)	Rotate tires every 7,500 miles (12,000 km)								
Visually inspect the following items:									
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components, driveshaft boots	Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 6 months								
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS) All fluid levels and conditions of fluids Cooling system hoses and connections *Exhaust system, *fuel lines and connections Lights and controls, vehicle underbody	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

\* 1 : See timing belt on page [283](#) to determine need for replacement.

\* 2 : Balancer belt applies to 4-cylinder models only.

\* 3 : See Dust and Pollen Filter on page [282](#) for replacement information under special driving conditions.

## 242 Maintenance

### U.S. Owners

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your vehicle *MAINLY* under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 5 miles (8 km) per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 10 miles (16 km) per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot [over 90°F (32°C)] conditions.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Trailer towing, driving with a car top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

### Canadian Owners

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions.

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty, last column, page [239](#).

Service at the indicated distance or time, whichever comes first. Do the items in **A, B, C, D, E** as required for each distance/time.

**U.S. Owners** — Refer to page 242 to determine which schedule to use.

**Canadian Owners** — Use the Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions.

3,750 mi/6,000 km	Do items in A.
7,500 mi/12,000 km	Do items in A, B.
11,250 mi/18,000 km	Do items in A.
15,000 mi/24,000 km/1 yr	<input type="checkbox"/> Clean air cleaner element. Do items in A, B, C.
18,750 mi/30,000 km	Do items in A.
22,500 mi/36,000 km	Do items in A, B.
26,250 mi/42,000 km	Do items in A.
30,000 mi/48,000 km/2 yrs	Do items in A, B, C, D.
33,750 mi/54,000 km	Do items in A.
37,500 mi/60,000 km	Do items in A, B.
41,250 mi/66,000 km	Do items in A.
3 yrs (independent of mileage)	Do item in E.
45,000 mi/72,000 km/3 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Clean air cleaner element. Do items in A, B, C.
48,750 mi/78,000 km	Do items in A.
52,500 mi/84,000 km	Do items in A, B.
56,250 mi/90,000 km	Do items in A.
60,000 mi/96,000 km/3 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace MT fluid.
60,000 mi/96,000 km/3 yrs, then replace every 30,000 mi/ 48,000 km/2 yrs.	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace AT fluid.
60,000 mi/96,000 km/4 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> * Replace timing belt <sup>*1</sup> , balancer belt <sup>*1, *2</sup> , inspect water pump. Do items in A, B, C, D.
63,750 mi/102,000 km	Do items in A.

\* 1 : See timing belt on page 283 to determine need for replacement.

\* 2 : Balancer belt applies to 4-cylinder models only.

\* 3 : See Dust and Pollen Filter on page 282 for replacement  
information under special driving conditions.

<b>A</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine oil and filter.
<b>B</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect front and rear brakes. <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires (follow pattern on page 287 ). <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect tie rod ends, steering gear box and boots. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect suspension components. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect driveshaft boots.
<b>C</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Check parking brake adjustment. <input type="checkbox"/> Lubricate all hinges, locks and latches with multipurpose grease. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect brake hoses and lines (including ABS) <input type="checkbox"/> Check all fluid levels, condition of fluids, and check for leaks. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect cooling system hoses and connections. <input type="checkbox"/> * Inspect exhaust system. <input type="checkbox"/> * Inspect fuel lines and connections <input type="checkbox"/> Check all lights. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect the underbody.
<b>D</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace air cleaner element. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and adjust drive belts. <input type="checkbox"/> Replace dust and pollen filter <sup>*3</sup> .
<b>E</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace brake fluid every 3 years (independent of mileage).

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty, last  
column, page 239 .

NOTE:

- Check engine oil and coolant at each fuel stop.
- Check and adjust valve clearance, cold engine, only if noisy.

67,500 mi/108,000 km	Do items in A, B.
71,250 mi/114,000 km	Do items in A.
75,000 mi/120,000 km/5 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Clean air cleaner element. Do items in A, B, C.
78,750 mi/126,000 km	Do items in A.
82,500 mi/132,000 km	Do items in A, B.
86,250 mi/138,000 km	Do items in A.
90,000 mi/144,000 km/5 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace AT fluid.
6 yrs (independent of mileage)	Do item in E.
90,000 mi/144,000 km/6 yrs	Do items in A, B, C, D.
93,750 mi/150,000 km	Do items in A.
97,500 mi/156,000 km	Do items in A, B.
101,250 mi/162,000 km	Do items in A.
105,000 mi/168,000 km/7 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace timing belt <sup>*1</sup> , balancer belt <sup>*1, *2</sup> , and inspect water pump. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect valve clearance. <input type="checkbox"/> Check idle speed. <input type="checkbox"/> Clean air cleaner element. <input type="checkbox"/> Replace spark plugs. Do items in A, B, C.
108,750 mi/174,000 km	Do items in A.
112,500 mi/180,000 km	Do items in A, B.
116,250 mi/186,000 km	Do items in A.
120,000 mi/192,000 km/8 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace timing belt <sup>*1</sup> , balancer belt <sup>*1, *2</sup> , and inspect water pump. Do items in A, B, C, D.
120,000 mi/192,000 km/10 yrs, then replace every 60,000 mi/96,000 km/5 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine coolant
120,000 mi/192,000 km/6 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace MT fluid
120,000 mi/192,000 km/7 yrs	<input type="checkbox"/> Replace AT fluid

- # : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty, last column, page [239](#) .
- \* 1 : See timing belt on page [283](#) to determine need for replacement.
- \* 2 : Balancer belt applies to 4-cylinder models only.
- \* 3 : See Dust and Pollen Filter on page [282](#) for replacement information under special driving conditions.

## NOTE:

- Check engine oil and coolant at each fuel stop.
- Check and adjust valve clearance, cold engine, only if noisy.

# Required Maintenance Record (for Normal and Severe Schedules)

You or the servicing dealer can record all completed maintenance here, whether you follow the schedule for normal conditions (page 240) or severe conditions (page 242). Keep the receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

<b>3,750 mi</b> 6,000 km	Signature or dealer stamp	mi/km
		Date
<b>7,500 mi</b> 12,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>11,250 mi</b> 18,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>15,000 mi</b> 24,000 km (or 1 year)		mi/km
		Date
<b>18,750 mi</b> 30,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>22,500 mi</b> 36,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>26,250 mi</b> 42,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>30,000 mi</b> 48,000 km (or 2 years)		mi/km
		Date

<b>33,750 mi</b> 54,000 km	Signature or dealer stamp	mi/km
		Date
<b>37,500 mi</b> 60,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>41,250 mi</b> 66,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>45,000 mi</b> 72,000 km (or 3 years)		mi/km
		Date
<b>48,750 mi</b> 78,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>52,500 mi</b> 84,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>56,250 mi</b> 90,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>60,000 mi</b> 96,000 km (or 4 years)		mi/km
		Date

# Required Maintenance Record (for Normal and Severe Schedules)

<b>63,750 mi</b> 102,000 km	Signature or dealer stamp	mi/km
		Date
<b>67,500 mi</b> 108,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>71,250 mi</b> 114,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>75,000 mi</b> 120,000 km (or 5 years)		mi/km
		Date
<b>78,750 mi</b> 126,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>82,500 mi</b> 132,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>86,250 mi</b> 138,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>90,000 mi</b> 144,000 km (or 6 years)		mi/km
		Date

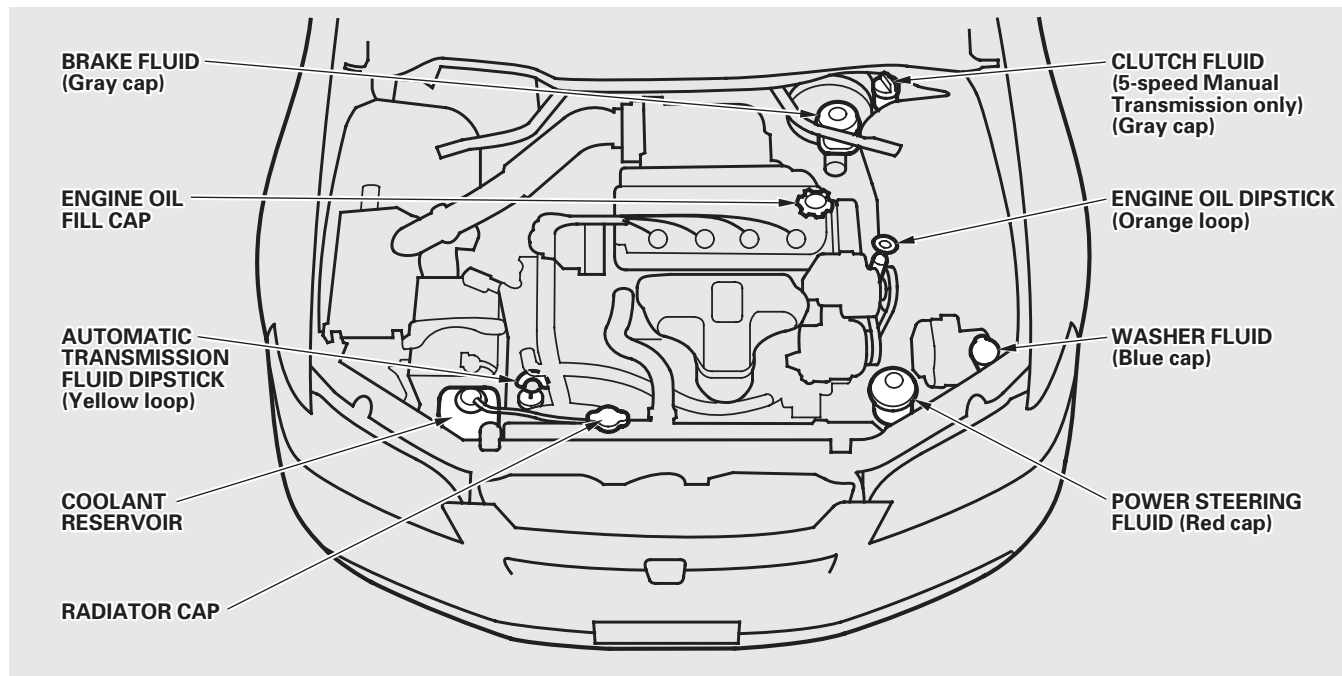
<b>93,750 mi</b> 150,000 km	Signature or dealer stamp	mi/km
		Date
<b>97,500 mi</b> 156,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>101,250 mi</b> 162,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>105,000 mi</b> 168,000 km (or 7 years)		mi/km
		Date
<b>108,750 mi</b> 174,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>112,500 mi</b> 180,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>116,250 mi</b> 186,000 km		mi/km
		Date
<b>120,000 mi</b> 192,000 km (or 8 years)		mi/km
		Date

You should check the following items at the specified intervals. If you are unsure of how to perform any check, turn to the page given.

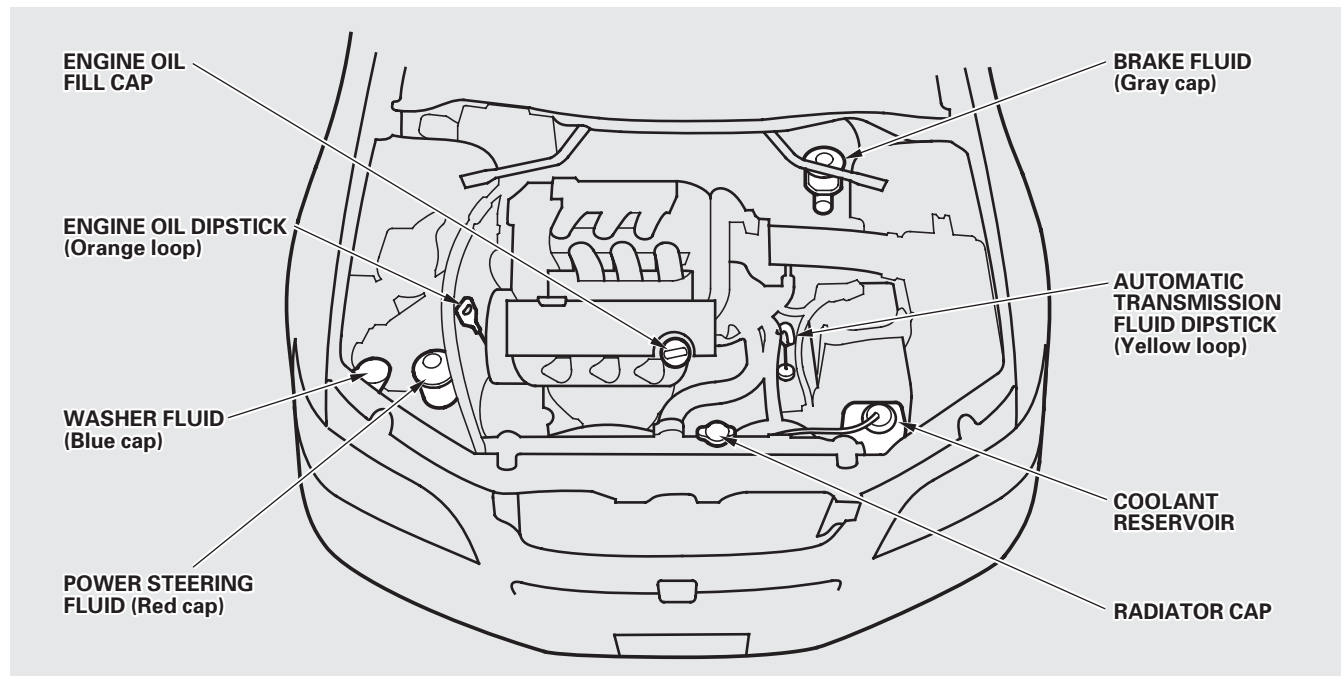
- Engine oil level — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page [198](#) .
  - Engine coolant level — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page [200](#) .
  - Windshield washer fluid — Check the level in the reservoir monthly. If weather conditions cause you to use the washers frequently, check the reservoir each time you stop for fuel. See page [262](#) .
  - Automatic transmission — Check the fluid level monthly. See page [263](#) .
  - Brakes — Check the fluid level monthly. See page [267](#) .
- Tires — Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page [283](#) .
  - Lights — Check the operation of the headlights, parking lights, taillights, high-mount brake light, turn signals, brake lights, and license plate lights monthly. See page [290](#) .



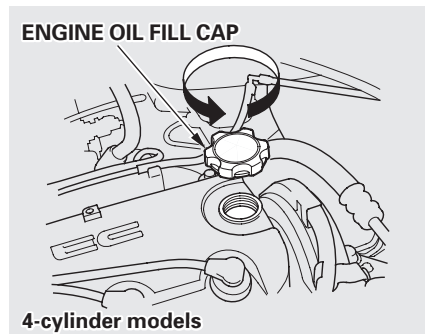
## 4-cylinder Models



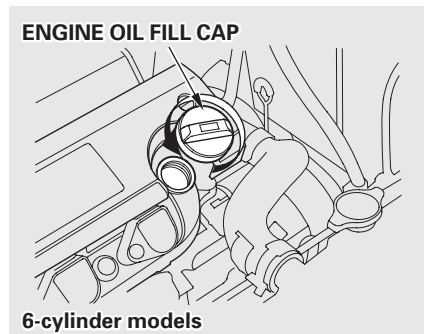
## 6-cylinder Models



## Adding Oil



To add oil, unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil, and install the engine oil fill cap. Tighten it securely. Wait a few minutes and recheck the oil level. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.



## Recommended Oil

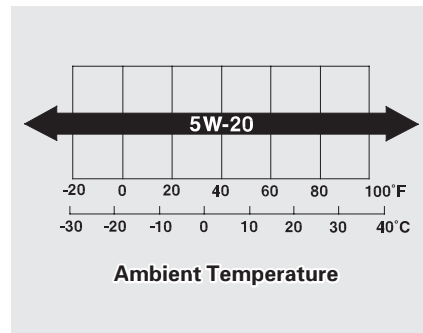
Oil is major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil displaying the API Certification Seal. This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving, and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements. It is highly recommended that you use Honda Motor Oil in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

Make sure the API Certification Seal says “For Gasoline Engines.”

API CERTIFICATION SEAL



The oil's viscosity or weight is provided on the container's label. Select the oil for your vehicle according to this chart.



5W-20 oil is formulated for year-round protection of your Honda, to improve cold weather starting, and to help your engine use less fuel.

If 5W-20 oil is not available, a 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with 5W-20 at the next oil change.

## Synthetic Oil

You may use a synthetic motor oil if it meets the same requirements given for a conventional motor oil: it displays the API Certification Seal, and it is the proper weight as shown on the chart. When using synthetic oil, you must follow the oil and filter change intervals given in the maintenance schedule.

## Additives

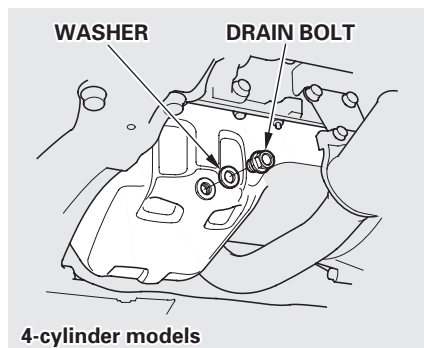
Your Honda does not need any oil additives. Purchasing additives for the engine or transmission will not increase your car's performance or longevity. It only increases the cost of operating your car.

## Changing the Oil and Filter

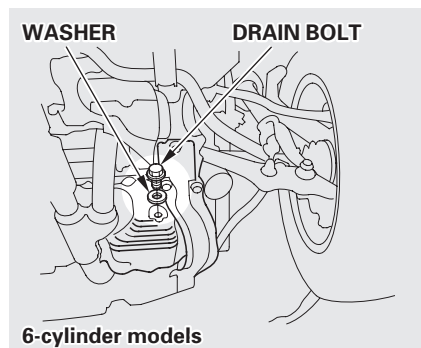
Always change the oil and filter according to the time and distance (miles/kilometers) recommendations in the maintenance schedule. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the car. The car should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled mechanic.

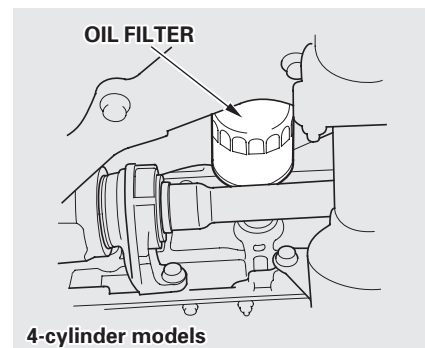
1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.



2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.



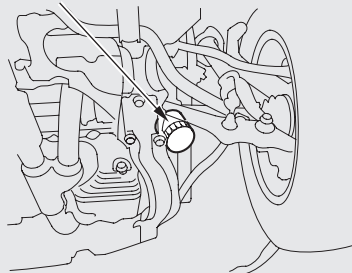
3. Remove the oil filter and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench (available from your Honda dealer) is required to remove the filter.



4. Install a new oil filter according to instructions that come with it.
5. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.  
Tighten it to:  
33 lbf·ft (44 N·m , 4.5 kgf·m)

*CONTINUED*

## OIL FILTER



6-cylinder models

6. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

Engine oil change capacity  
(including filter):

(4-cylinder models)

4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ , 3.8 Imp qt)

(6-cylinder models)

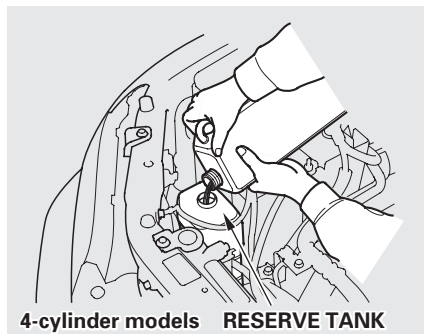
4.6 US qt (4.4 ℓ , 3.9 Imp qt)

7. Replace the engine oil fill cap.  
Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator light should go out within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine and reinspect your work.
8. Let the engine run for several minutes and check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.
9. Turn off the engine, let it sit for several minutes, then check the oil level. If necessary, add oil to bring the level to the upper mark on the dipstick.

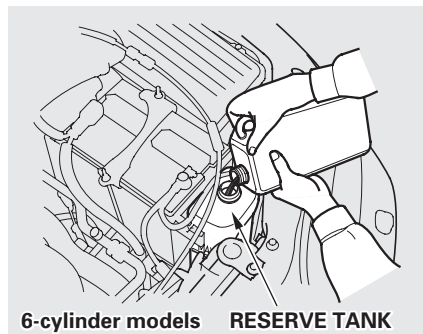
## NOTICE

*Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not discard it in a trash bin or dump it on the ground.*

## Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks. This coolant should always be a mixture of 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.



Always use Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent water. It does not require any additional mixing. If it is not available, you may use another major-brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Make sure it is a high-quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. However, continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in

corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

### **⚠ WARNING**

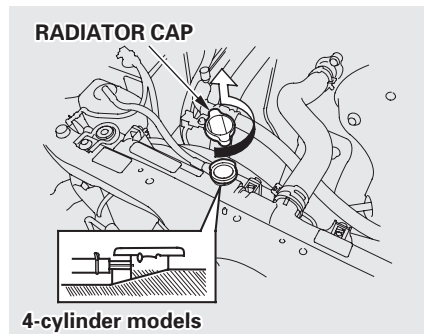
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

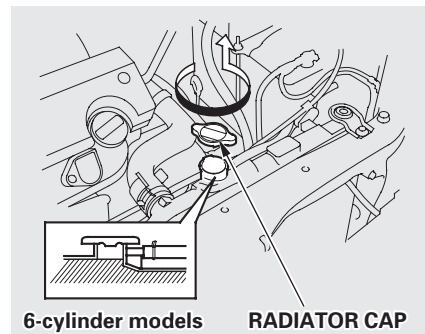
*CONTINUED*



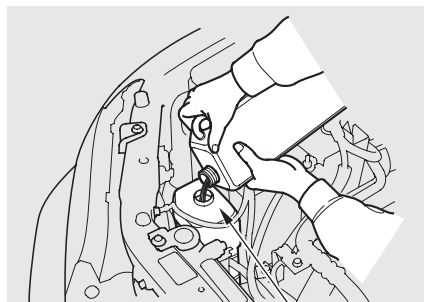
1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.



2. Turn the radiator cap counter-clockwise, without pressing down on it, until it stops. This relieves any pressure remaining in the cooling system.

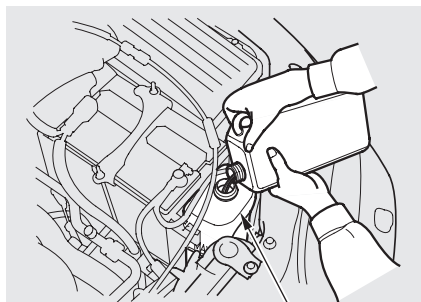


3. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on. Tighten it fully.



4-cylinder models      RESERVE TANK

6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.



6-cylinder models      RESERVE TANK

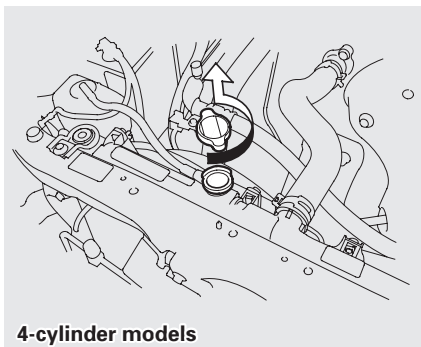
Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your car's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.

## Replacing Engine Coolant

The cooling system should be completely drained and refilled with new coolant according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule. Only use Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. Use of any non-Honda coolant or plain water can result in corrosion and deposits in the cooling system.

Draining the coolant requires access to the underside of the car. Unless you have the tools and knowledge, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled mechanic.

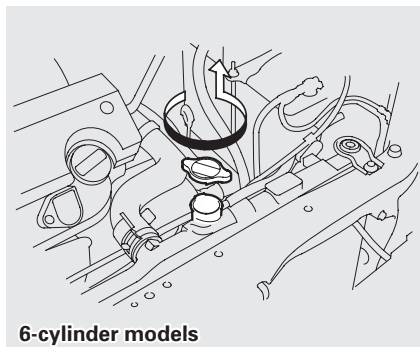
*CONTINUED*



1. Open the hood. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool to the touch.

*Except EX V-6 model*

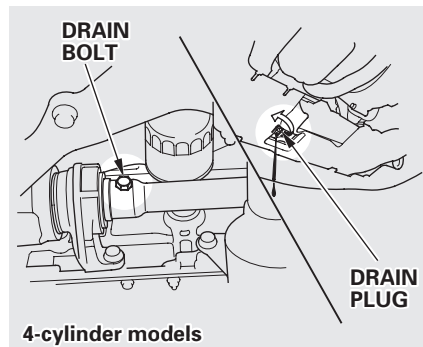
Turn the ignition ON (II). Turn the temperature control Dial all the way clockwise. Turn off the ignition and remove the key.



*EX V-6 model*

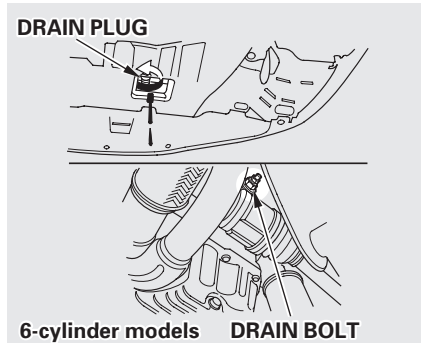
Turn the ignition ON (II). Turn the temperature control dial to 90°F (32°C). Turn off the ignition and remove the key.

2. Remove the radiator cap.



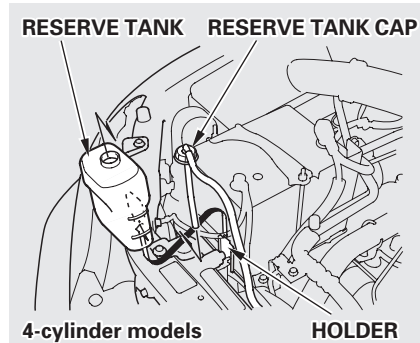
*4-cylinder models*

3. Loosen the drain plug on the bottom of the radiator. The coolant will drain through the splash guard. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the engine block.

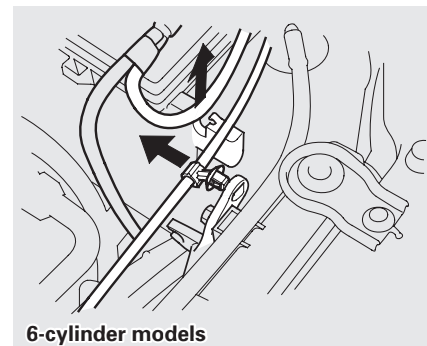


*6-cylinder models*

3. Loosen the drain plug on the bottom of the radiator. The coolant will drain through the splash guard. Loosen the drain bolt.



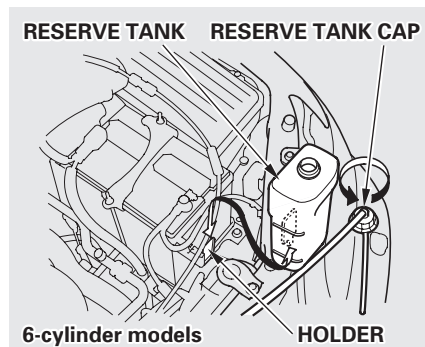
4. Remove the reserve tank from its holder by pulling it straight up. Drain the coolant, then put the tank back in its holder.



*6-cylinder models*

When removing the reserve tank, first remove the cruise control cable and the ground cable from their clips. After installing the tank back in place, put the cables back in their clips.

*CONTINUED*



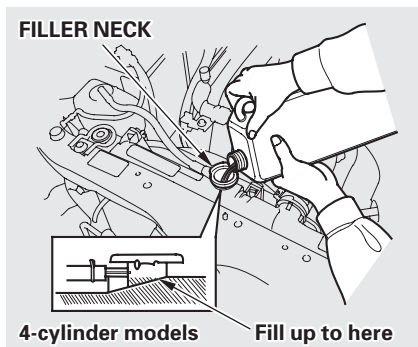
5. When the coolant stops draining, tighten the drain plug at the bottom of the radiator.

6. *4-cylinder models*

Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt in the engine block. Tighten it securely.

Tightening torque:

61 lbf·ft (83 N·m , 8.5 kgf·m)

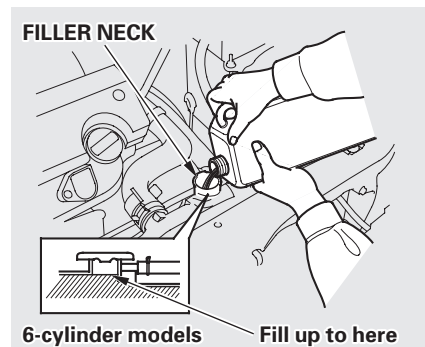


*6-cylinder models*

Tighten the drain bolt at the rear of the engine cylinder block securely.

Tightening torque:

7 lbf·ft (10 N·m , 1.0 kgf·m)



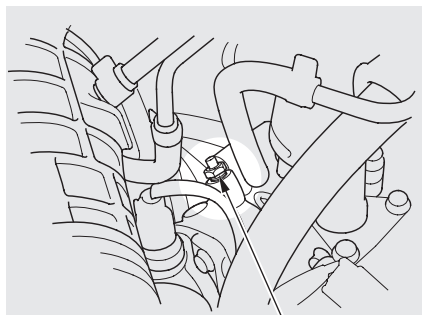
7. *4-cylinder models*

Loosen the bleeder bolt on top of the engine.

Pour Honda All Season

Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 into the radiator. This coolant is a mixture of 50 percent anti-freeze and 50 percent water. Pre-mixing is not required.

Tighten the bleeder bolt when coolant comes out in a steady stream with no bubbles.



**4-cylinder models BLEEDER BOLT**

*6-cylinder models*

Pour coolant into the radiator up to the base of the filler neck.

The cooling system capacity is:

*With 5-speed manual transmission:*

1.45 US gal (5.5 ℓ , 1.21 Imp gal)

*With automatic transmission:*

1.43 US gal (5.4 ℓ , 1.19 Imp gal)

*6-cylinder models*

1.48 US gal (5.6 ℓ , 1.23 Imp gal)

8. Start the engine and let it run for about 30 seconds. Then turn off the engine.
9. Fill the radiator with coolant up to the base of the filler neck.
10. Fill the reserve tank to the MAX mark. Install the reserve tank cap.
11. Install the radiator cap, and tighten it to the first stop.
12. Start the engine and let it run until the radiator cooling fan comes on at least twice. Then stop the engine.
13. Remove the radiator cap. Pour coolant into the radiator up to the base of the filler neck and into the reserve tank up to the MAX mark.
14. Start the engine and hold it at 1,500 rpm until the cooling fan comes on. Turn off the engine. Check the coolant level in the radiator and add coolant if needed.
15. Install the radiator cap, and tighten it fully.
16. If necessary, fill the reserve tank to the MAX mark. Install the reserve tank cap.

# Windshield Washers

Check the level in the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly during normal usage. In bad weather, when you use the washers often, check the level every time you stop for fuel.

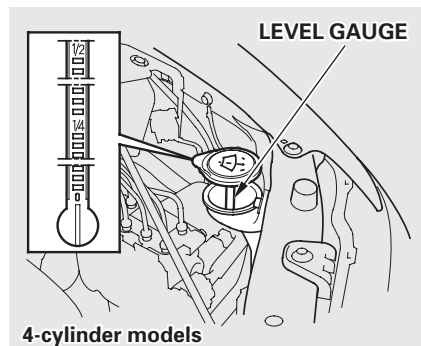
The windshield washer reservoir is located behind the headlight.

Check the reservoir's fluid level by removing the cap and looking at the level gauge attached to the cap.

## Canadian Models

The low washer level indicator will light when the level is low (see page 59).

Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windshield washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

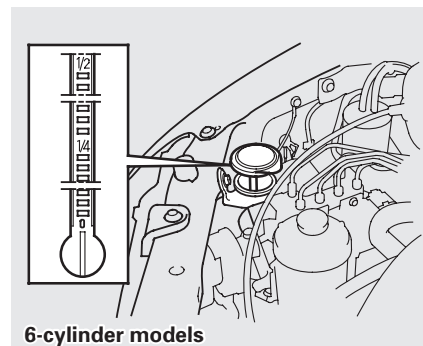


## NOTICE

*Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir.*

*Antifreeze can damage your car's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.*

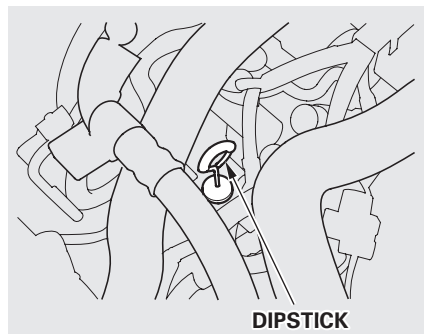
*Use only commercially-available windshield washer fluid.*



When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windshield wiper blades with windshield washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition the blade edges.

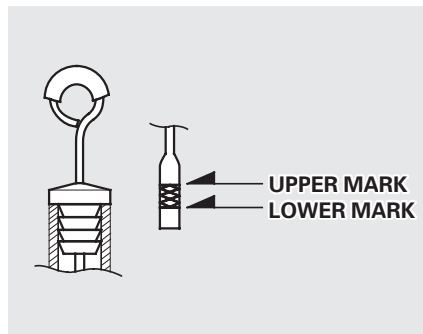
## Automatic Transmission

### 4-cylinder models



Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the car on level ground. Shut off the engine.
2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission and wipe it with a clean cloth.



3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.
4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the tube to bring it to the upper mark. Always use Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid). If it is not available, you may use a DEXRON® III automatic transmission fluid as a temporary replacement. However, continued use can affect shift quality. Have the transmission flushed and refilled with Honda ATF-Z1 as soon as it is convenient.

To thoroughly flush the transmission, the technician should drain and refill it with Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid), then drive the vehicle a short distance. Do this three times. Then drain and refill the transmission a final time.

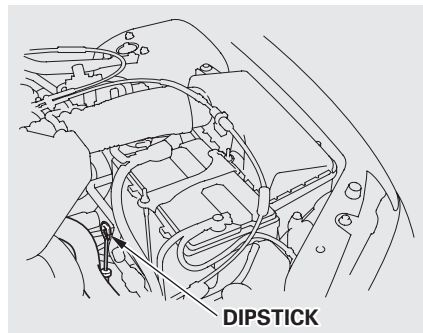
*CONTINUED*



6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

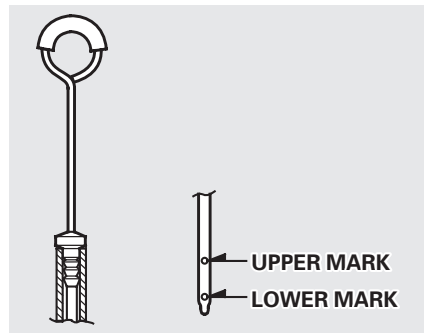
The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

## Automatic Transmission *6-cylinder models*



Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the car on level ground. Shut off the engine.
2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission and wipe it with a clean cloth.



3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.
4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

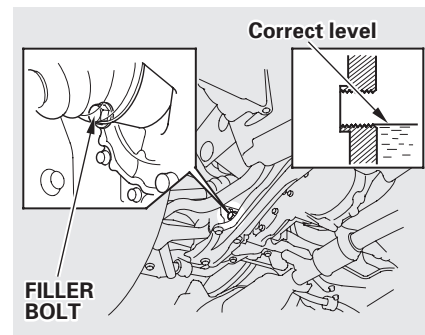
5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the tube to bring it to the upper mark. Always use Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid). If it is not available, you may use a DEXRON® III automatic transmission fluid as a temporary replacement. However, continued use can affect shift quality. Have the transmission flushed and refilled with Honda ATF-Z1 as soon as it is convenient.

To thoroughly flush the transmission, the technician should drain and refill it with Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid), then drive the vehicle a short distance. Do this three times. Then drain and refill the transmission a final time.

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

## 5-speed Manual Transmission



Check the fluid level with the transmission at normal operating temperature and the car sitting on level ground. Remove the transmission filler bolt and carefully feel inside the bolt hole with your finger. The fluid level should be up to the edge of the bolt hole. If it is not, add Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) until it starts to run out of the hole. Reinstall the filler bolt and tighten it securely.

## Transmission Fluid

---

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use an API service SG, SH or SJ grade motor oil with a viscosity of SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 as a temporary replacement. An SG grade is preferred, but an SH or SJ grade may be used if SG is not available. However, motor oil does not contain the proper additives and continued use can cause stiffer shifting. Replace as soon as it is convenient.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Check the fluid level in the reservoirs monthly. There are up to two reservoirs, depending on the model. They are:

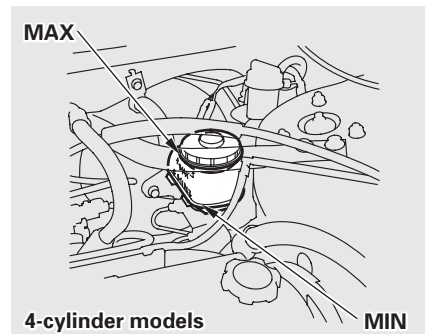
- Brake fluid reservoir (all models)
- Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission only)

The brake fluid should be replaced according to the time recommendation in the maintenance schedule.

Always use Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3. If it is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid, from a sealed container, as a temporary replacement. However, the use of any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

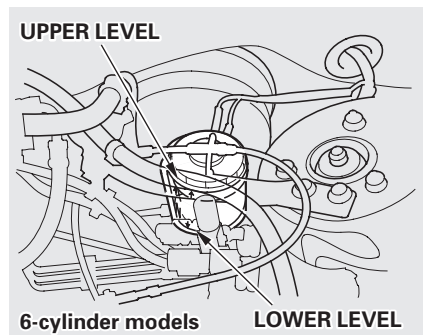
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your car's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

## Brake System

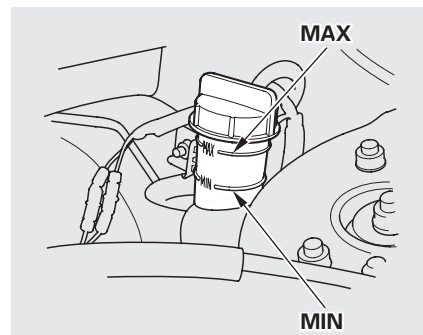


The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

*CONTINUED*



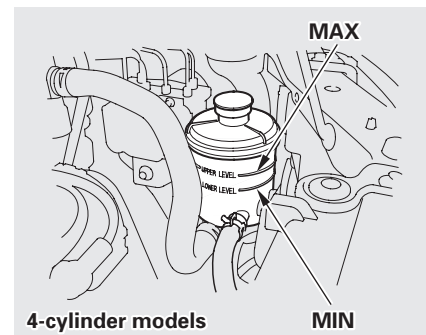
## Clutch System



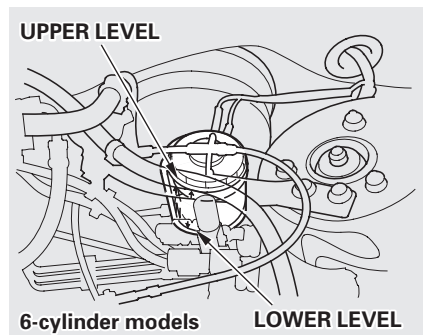
The fluid should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.

Low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.

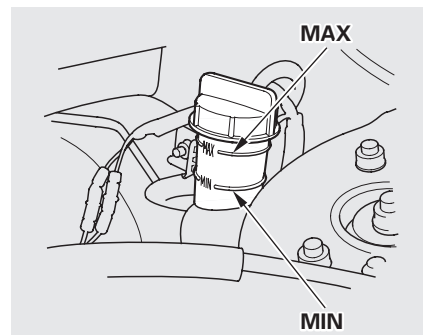
## Power Steering



Check the level when the engine is cold. Look at the side of the reservoir. The fluid should be between the **UPPER LEVEL** and **LOWER LEVEL**. If it is below the **LOWER LEVEL**, add power steering fluid to the **UPPER LEVEL**.



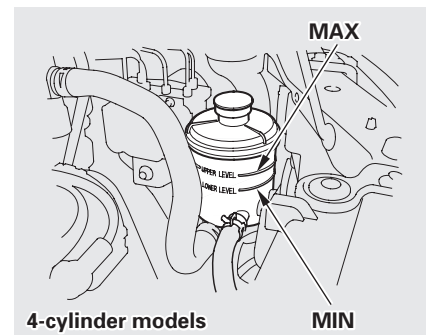
## Clutch System



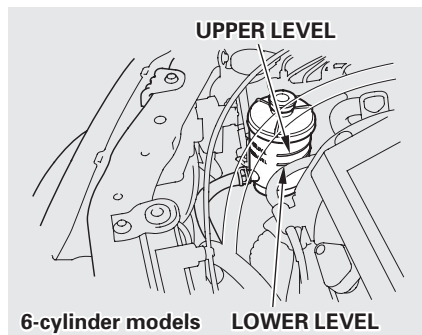
The fluid should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.

Low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.

## Power Steering



Check the level when the engine is cold. Look at the side of the reservoir. The fluid should be between the **UPPER LEVEL** and **LOWER LEVEL**. If it is below the **LOWER LEVEL**, add power steering fluid to the **UPPER LEVEL**.



Always use Honda Power Steering Fluid. If it is not available, you may use another power steering fluid as an emergency replacement. However, continued use can cause increased wear and poor steering in cold weather. Have the power steering system flushed and refilled with Honda PSF as soon as possible.

A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

### NOTICE

*Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.*

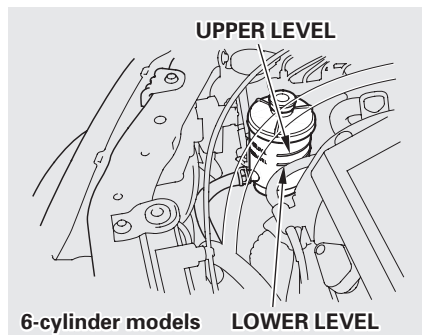
### Air Cleaner Element

The air cleaner element should be cleaned or replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

### Cleaning (Severe Conditions)

Clean the air cleaner element by blowing compressed air through it in the opposite direction to normal air flow. If you do not have access to compressed air (such as a service station), ask your Honda dealer to do this service.

Follow the replacement procedure for removal and reinstallation.



Always use Honda Power Steering Fluid. If it is not available, you may use another power steering fluid as an emergency replacement. However, continued use can cause increased wear and poor steering in cold weather. Have the power steering system flushed and refilled with Honda PSF as soon as possible.

A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

### NOTICE

*Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.*

### Air Cleaner Element

The air cleaner element should be cleaned or replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

### Cleaning (Severe Conditions)

Clean the air cleaner element by blowing compressed air through it in the opposite direction to normal air flow. If you do not have access to compressed air (such as a service station), ask your Honda dealer to do this service.

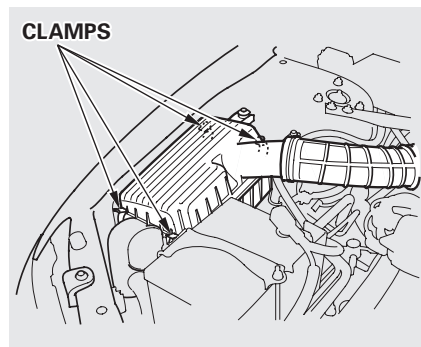
Follow the replacement procedure for removal and reinstallation.



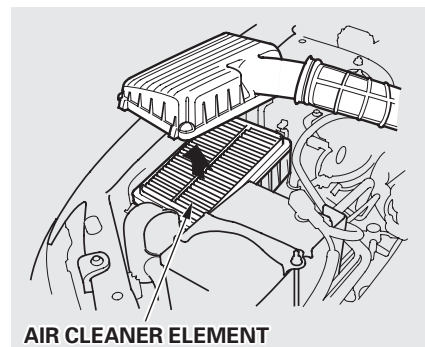
## Air Cleaner Element (4-cylinder Models)

### Replacement

The air cleaner element is inside the air cleaner housing on the passenger's side of the engine compartment. To replace it:



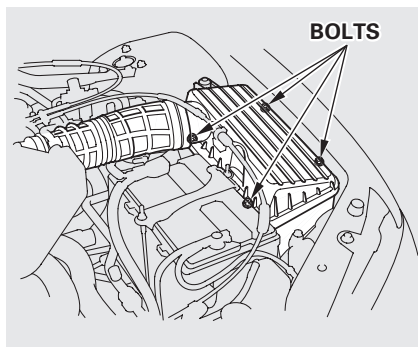
1. Unsnap the four hold-down clamps and remove the air cleaner housing cover.
2. Remove the old air cleaner element.
3. Carefully clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp rag.



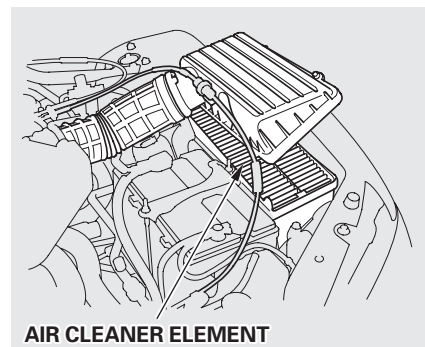
4. Place the new air cleaner element in the air cleaner housing.
5. Reinstall the air cleaner housing cover, snap the four hold-down clamps back into place.

### Replacement

The air cleaner element is inside the air cleaner housing on the driver's side of the engine compartment. To replace it:



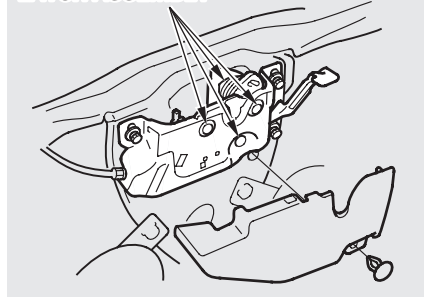
1. Loosen the four bolts and remove the air cleaner housing cover.
2. Remove the old air cleaner element.
3. Carefully clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp rag.



4. Place the new air cleaner element in the air cleaner housing.
5. Reinstall the air cleaner housing cover, tighten the four bolts.

## Hood Latch

LATCH ASSEMBLY

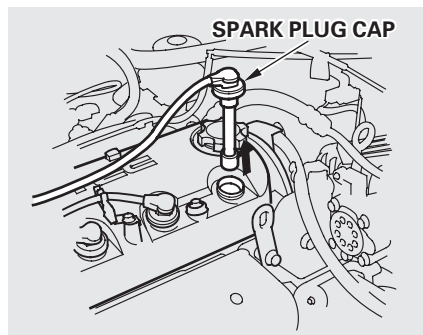


Clean the hood latch assembly with a mild cleaner, then lubricate it with a multipurpose grease. Lubricate all the moving parts, including the pivot. Follow the time and distance recommendations in the Maintenance Schedule. If you are not sure how to clean and grease the latch, contact your Honda dealer.

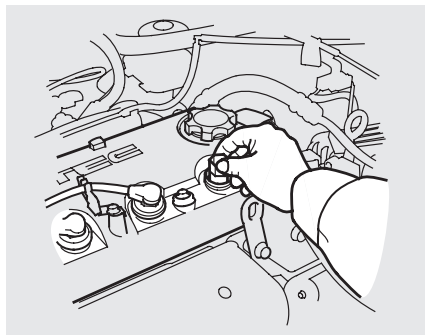
## Spark Plugs

The spark plugs in your car should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

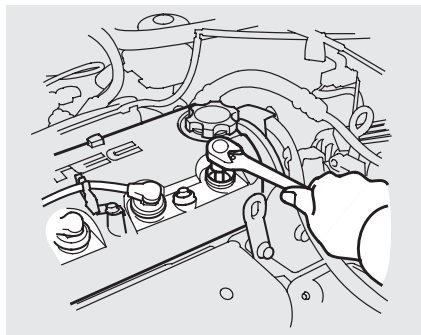
## Replacement



1. Clean up any dirt and oil around the spark plug caps.
2. Remove the spark plug cap by pulling it straight out.
3. Remove the spark plug with a five-eighths inch (16 mm) spark plug socket.



4. Put the new spark plug into the socket; then screw it into the hole. Screw it in by hand so you do not crossthread it.



5. Torque the spark plug. (If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the spark plug two-thirds of a turn after it contacts the cylinder head.)  
Tightening torque:  
13 lbf·ft (18 N·m , 1.8 kgf·m)

## NOTICE

*Tighten the spark plugs carefully. A spark plug that is too loose can overheat and damage the engine. Overtightening can cause damage to the threads in the cylinder head.*

6. Install the spark plug cap.
7. Repeat this procedure for the other three spark plugs.

## Specifications:

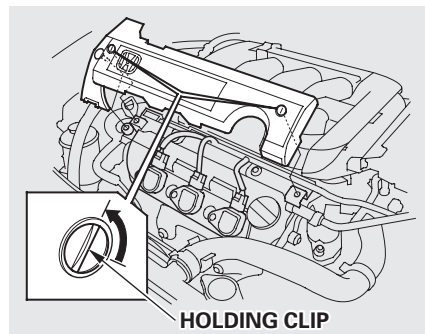
NGK:	PZFR5F-11
DENSO:	PKJ16CR-L11

Spark Plug Gap:  
0.04 in (1.1 mm)  $\begin{smallmatrix} +0 \\ -0.1 \text{ mm} \end{smallmatrix}$

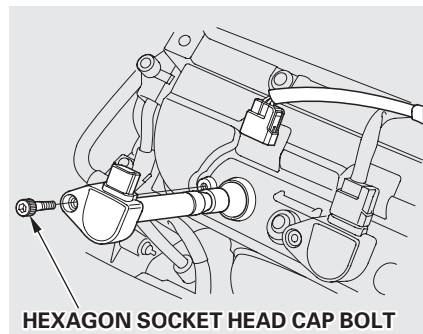
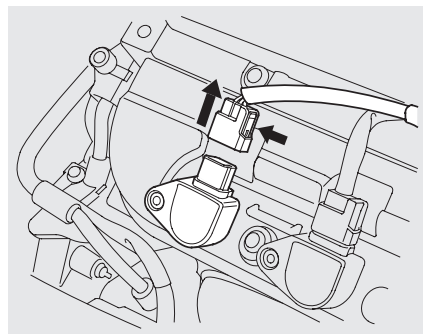
## Spark Plugs (6-cylinder Models)

The spark plugs in your car should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

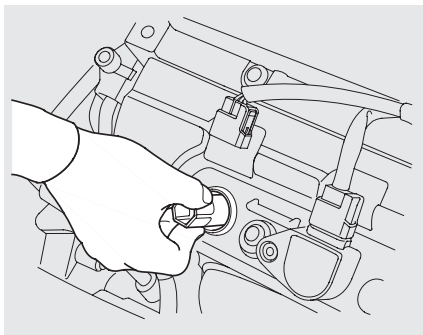
### Replacement



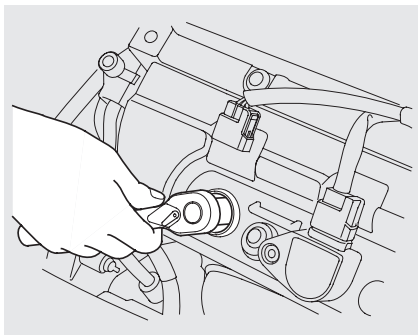
1. Loosen the two holding clips by turning the heads one-quarter turn counterclockwise with a flat-tipped screwdriver. Remove the cover on the front cylinder bank by pulling it straight up.



4. Use a wrench to remove the hexagon socket head cap bolt holding the ignition coil. Remove the ignition coil by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the spark plug with a five-eighths inch (16 mm) spark plug socket.



6. Put the new spark plug into the socket; then screw it into the hole. Screw it in by hand so you do not crossthead it.
7. Torque the spark plug. (If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the spark plug two-thirds of a turn after it contacts the cylinder head.)  
Tightening torque:  
13 lbf·ft (18 N·m , 1.8 kgf·m)



## NOTICE

*Tighten the spark plugs carefully. A spark plug that is too loose can overheat and damage the engine. Overtightening can cause damage to the threads in the cylinder head.*

8. Install the ignition coil. Reinstall the hexagon socket head cap bolt.

9. Push the wire connector onto the ignition coil. Make sure it locks in place.

10. Repeat this procedure for the other five spark plugs.

11. Reinstall the cover on the front cylinder bank while putting its mounting clip in the hole on the passenger's side. Secure the cover by turning the heads of the two holding clips one-quarter turn clockwise with a flat-tipped screwdriver.

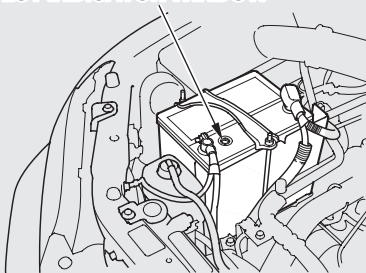
## Specifications:

NGK: PZFR5F-11  
DENSO: PKJ16CR-L11

Spark Plug Gap:  
0.04 in (1.1 mm)  $\begin{smallmatrix} +0 \\ -0.1 \text{ mm} \end{smallmatrix}$

Check the condition of your car's battery monthly. You should check the color of the test indicator window, and for corrosion on the terminals.

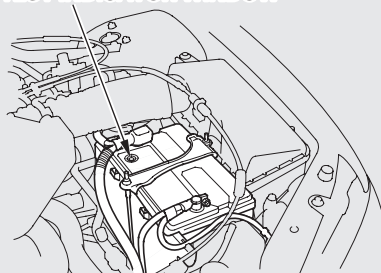
## TEST INDICATOR WINDOW



4-cylinder models

Check the battery condition by looking at the test indicator window on the battery. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colors.

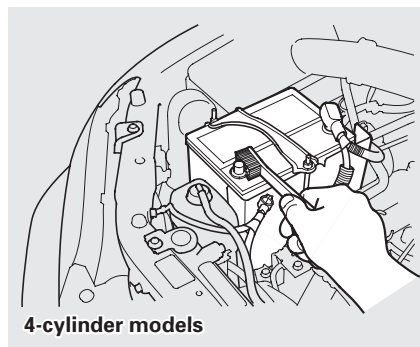
## TEST INDICATOR WINDOW



6-cylinder models

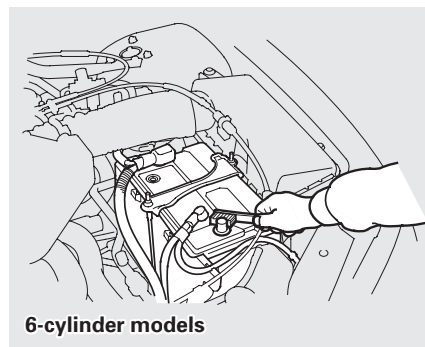
Check the battery terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



4-cylinder models

If the terminals are severely corroded, clean them with baking soda and water. Then use a wrench to loosen and remove the cables from the terminals. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first and reconnect it last. Clean the battery terminals with a terminal cleaning tool or wire brush. Reconnect and tighten the cables, then coat the terminals with grease.



6-cylinder models

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damage to the car's electrical system.

*CONTINUED*



## **⚠ WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled mechanic do the battery maintenance.

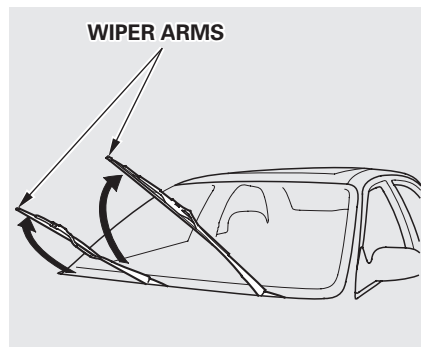
*On EX, EX V-6, SE, and U.S. Value Package models*

If your car's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio you will see "Code" in the frequency display. Use the Preset buttons to enter the five-digit code (see page [183](#) ).

## **NOTICE**

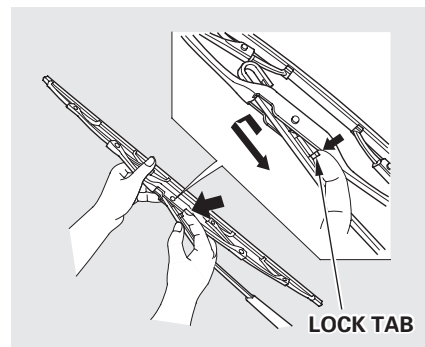
*Charging the battery with the cables connected can seriously damage your car's electronic controls. Detach the battery cables before connecting the battery to a charger.*

Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months. Look for signs of cracking in the rubber, or areas that are getting hard. Replace the blades if you find these signs, or they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.



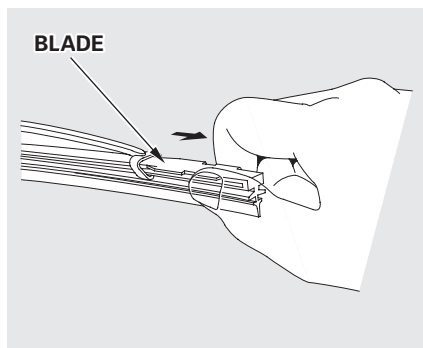
To replace the blade:

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield. Raise the driver's side first, then the passenger's side.

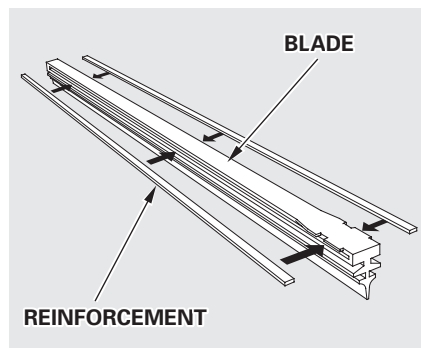


2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pushing in the lock tab. Hold it in while you push the blade assembly toward the base of the arm.

*CONTINUED*



3. Remove the blade from its holder by grasping the tabbed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.



4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

5. Slide the new wiper blade into the holder until the tabs lock.
6. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.
7. Lower the wiper arm down against the windshield. Lower the passenger's side first, then the driver's side.

*Optional for U.S. DX and Value Package models*

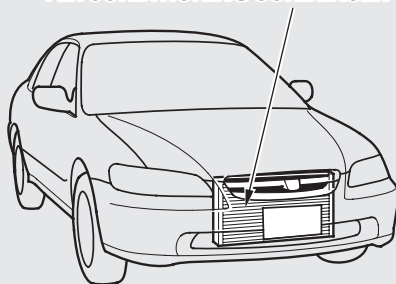
Your car's air conditioning is a sealed system. Any major maintenance, such as recharging, should be done by a qualified mechanic. You can do a couple of things to make sure the air conditioning works efficiently.

Periodically check the engine's radiator and air conditioning condenser for leaves, insects, and dirt stuck to the front surface. These block the air flow and reduce cooling efficiency. Use a light spray from a hose or a soft brush to remove them.

## NOTICE

*The condenser and radiator fins bend easily. Only use a low-pressure spray or soft-bristle brush to clean them.*

**AIR CONDITIONING CONDENSER**



Run the air conditioning at least once a week during the cold weather months. Run it for at least ten minutes while you are driving at a steady speed with the engine at normal operating temperature. This circulates the lubricating oil contained in the refrigerant.

If the air conditioning does not get as cold as before, have your dealer check the system. Recharge the system with Refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a). (See Specifications on page 342.)

## NOTICE

*Whenever you have the air conditioning system serviced, make sure the service facility uses a refrigerant recycling system. This system captures the refrigerant for reuse. Releasing refrigerant into the atmosphere can damage the environment.*

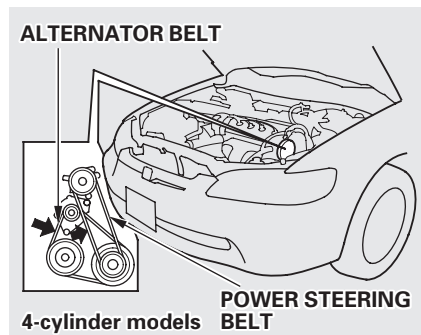
# Dust and Pollen Filter, Drive Belts

## Dust and Pollen Filter

The dust and pollen filter removes pollen and dust that is brought in from the outside through the heating and cooling system.

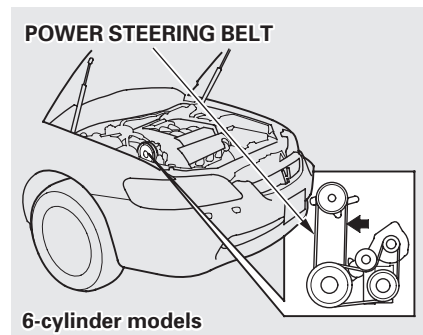
This filter should be replaced every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) under normal conditions. It should be replaced every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and diesel-powered vehicles. Replace it more often if air flow from the climate control system becomes less than usual. Have the dust and pollen filter replaced by your Honda dealer.

## Drive Belts



Check the condition of the drive belts (two on 4-cylinder models, one on 6-cylinder models). Examine the edges of each belt for cracks or fraying.

Check the tension of each belt by pushing on it with your thumb midway between the pulleys. The belts should have the following "play" or deflection.



*4-cylinder models*

Alternator belt:

(On vehicles without A/C)  
0.41–0.49 in (10.5–12.5 mm)

(On vehicles with A/C)  
0.28–0.35 in (7.0–9.0 mm)

Power steering belt:

0.51–0.63 in (13.0–16.0 mm)

*6-cylinder models*

Power steering belt:

0.51–0.65 in (13.0–16.5 mm)

If you see signs of wear or looseness, have your dealer adjust or replace the belts.

**Timing Belt**

The timing belt and balancer belt should normally be replaced at the intervals shown in the maintenance schedule.

Replace these belts at 60,000 miles (U.S.) or 100,000 km (Canada) if you regularly drive your car in one or more of these conditions:

- In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).
- In very low temperatures (under –20°F, –29°C).

**Tires**

To safely operate your car, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated. The following pages give more detailed information on how and when to check air pressure, how to inspect your tires for damage and wear, and what to do when your tires need to be replaced.

**⚠ WARNING**

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

*6-cylinder models*

Power steering belt:

0.51–0.65 in (13.0–16.5 mm)

If you see signs of wear or looseness, have your dealer adjust or replace the belts.

**Timing Belt**

The timing belt and balancer belt should normally be replaced at the intervals shown in the maintenance schedule.

Replace these belts at 60,000 miles (U.S.) or 100,000 km (Canada) if you regularly drive your car in one or more of these conditions:

- In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).
- In very low temperatures (under –20°F, –29°C).

**Tires**

To safely operate your car, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated. The following pages give more detailed information on how and when to check air pressure, how to inspect your tires for damage and wear, and what to do when your tires need to be replaced.

**⚠ WARNING**

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

## Inflation

Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life and riding comfort. Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated. Overinflated tires can make your car ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

We recommend that you visually check your tires every day. If you think a tire might be low, check it immediately with a tire gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure at least once a month. Even tires that are in good condition may lose one to two psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) per month. Remember to check the spare tire at the same time you check all the other tires.

Check the pressure in the tires when they are cold. This means the car has been parked for at least three hours. If you have to drive the car before checking the tire pressure, the tires can still be considered “cold” if you drive less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

If you check the pressure when the tires are hot (the car has been driven several miles), you will see readings 4 to 6 psi (30 to 40 kPa, 0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) higher than the cold reading. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the specified cold pressure. The tire will be underinflated.

You should get your own tire pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tire pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tire problem and not due to a variation between gauges.



***Recommended Tire Pressures for Normal Driving***

The following chart shows the recommended cold tire pressures for most normal driving conditions and speeds. Tire pressures for high speed driving are the same as for normal driving.

**U.S. DX, and Value Package**

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P195/70R14 90S	29 psi (200 kPa , 2.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

**U.S. : LX, EX, and SE****Canada : LX 4-cylinder, SE 4-cylinder  
and EX-L**

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P195/65R15 89H	30 psi (210 kPa , 2.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

**U.S. : LX V-6, EX V-6****Canada : EX V-6, SE V-6**

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P205/65R15 92V	30 psi (210 kPa , 2.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

The compact spare tire pressure is:  
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

These pressures are also given on  
the tire information label on the  
driver's doorjamb.

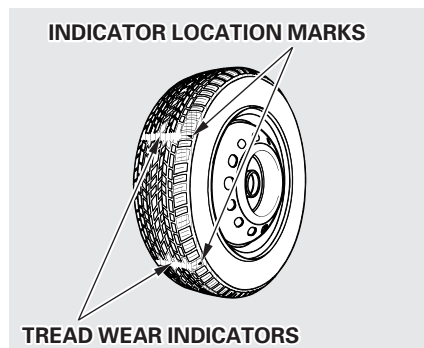
Tubeless tires have some ability to  
self-seal if they are punctured.  
However, because leakage is often  
very slow, you should look closely  
for punctures if a tire starts losing  
pressure.

## Inspection

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tires for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace the tire if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.



Your car's tires have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down to that point, you will see a 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide band running across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire. A tire that is this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tire if you can see the tread wear indicator in three or more places around the tire.

## Maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

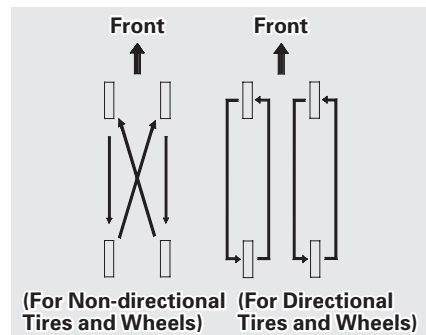
The tires were properly balanced by the factory. They may need to be rebalanced at some time before they are worn out. Have your dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel for repair.

Make sure the installer balances the wheels when you have new tires installed. This increases riding comfort and tire life. Your car's original tires were dynamic or "spin" balanced at the factory. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

### NOTICE

(U.S. LX with ABS, SE, EX, EX V-6)  
*Improper wheel weights can damage your car's aluminum wheels. Use only Genuine Honda wheel weights for balancing.*

### Tire Rotation



To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, you should have the tires rotated every 7,500 miles (12,000 km). Move the tires to the positions shown in the chart each time they are rotated.

When shopping for replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional." This means they are designed to rotate only in one direction. If you use directional tires,

they should be rotated only front-to-back.

### Replacing Tires and Wheels

The tires that came with your car were selected to match the performance capabilities of the car while providing the best combination of handling, ride comfort, and long life. You should replace them with radial tires of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Mixing radial and bias-ply tires on your car can reduce its braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy.

CONTINUED

## **⚠ WARNING**

Installing improper tires on your car can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, then replace the two front tires or the two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your car's handling.

The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the car. Tire size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to work

inconsistently.

If you ever need to replace a wheel, make sure the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheel that came on your car. Replacement wheels are available at your Honda dealer.

### **Wheels and Tires**

Wheel:

U.S. : DX and Value Package  
14 x 5 1/2 JJ

U.S. : LX, EX, and SE  
Canada : LX 4-cylinder, SE 4-cylinder,  
and EX-L  
15 x 6 JJ

U.S. : LX V-6, EX V-6  
Canada : EX V-6, SE V-6  
15 x 6 1/2 JJ

Tire:

U.S. : DX and Value Package  
P195/70R14 90S

U.S. : LX, EX and SE  
Canada : LX 4-cylinder, SE 4-cylinder,  
and EX-L  
P195/65R15 89H

U.S. : LX V-6, EX V-6  
Canada : EX V-6, SE V-6  
P205/65R15 92V

See page [345](#) for information about DOT Tire Quality Grading.

## Winter Driving

Tires that are marked “M+ S” or “All Season” on the sidewall have an all-weather tread design. They should be suitable for most winter driving conditions. Tires without these markings are designed for optimum traction in dry conditions. They may not provide adequate performance in winter driving. For the best performance in snowy or icy conditions, you should install snow tires or tire chains. They may be required by local laws under certain conditions.

### Snow Tires

If you mount snow tires on your Honda, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your car's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your car's

original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

### Tire Chains

Mount snow chains on your vehicle when warranted by driving conditions or required by local laws. Make sure the chains are the correct size for your tires. Install them only on the front tires.

#### 4-cylinder models

If metal chains are used, they must be SAE class “S”. Cable-type traction devices can also be used.

#### 6-cylinder models

Use only SAE class “S” cable-type traction devices.

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and investigate. Make sure the chains are installed tightly, and that they are not contacting the brake lines or suspension. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

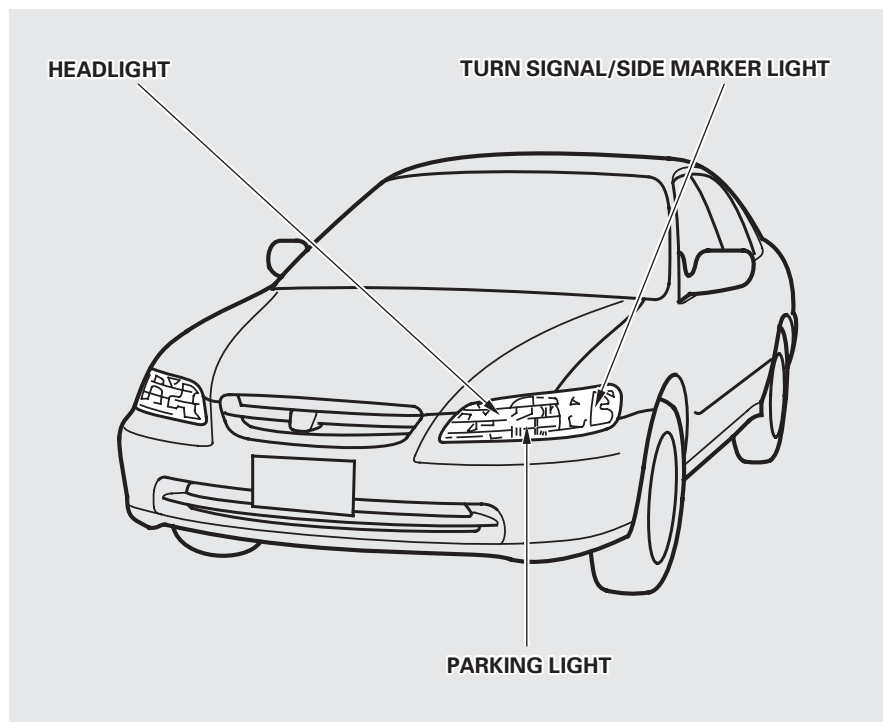
### NOTICE

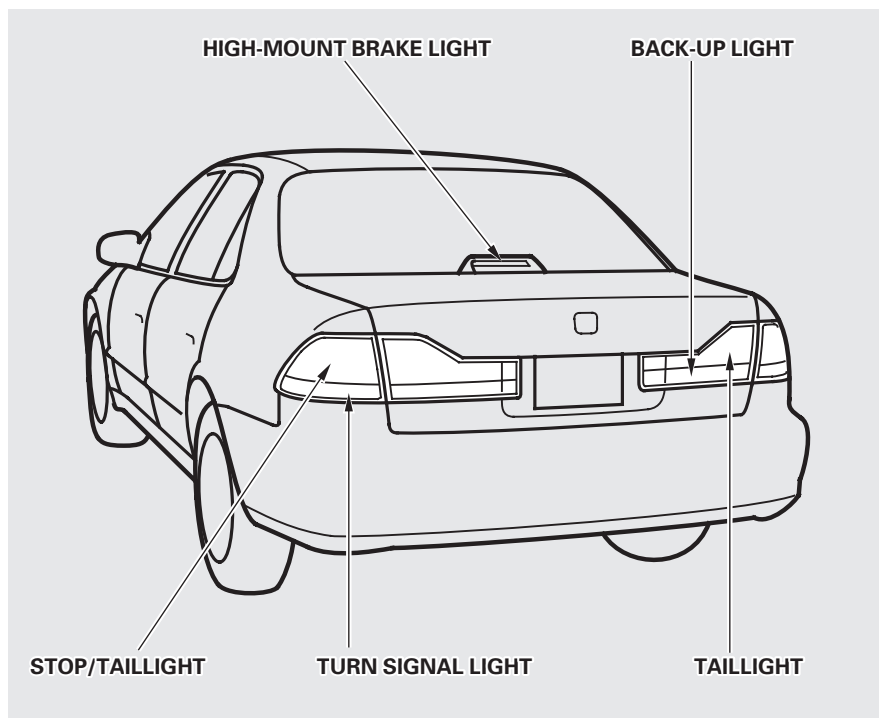
*Chains of the wrong size or that are improperly installed can damage your car's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if you hear the chains hitting any part of the car.*

# Lights

---

Check the operation of your car's exterior lights at least once a month. A burned out bulb can create an unsafe condition by reducing your car's visibility and the ability to signal your intentions to other drivers.





Check the following:

- Headlights (low and high beam)
- Parking lights
- Taillights
- Brake lights
- High-mount brake light
- Turn signals
- Back-up lights
- Hazard light function
- License plate light
- Side marker lights
- Daytime running lights (Canadian models)

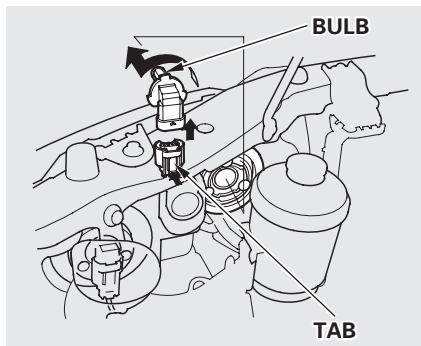
If you find any bulbs are burned out, replace them as soon as possible. Refer to the chart on page [343](#) to determine what type of replacement bulb is needed.

## Headlight Aiming

The headlights were properly aimed when your car was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, readjustment may be required. Adjustment of the headlights should be performed by a Honda technician or other qualified mechanic.

## Replacing a Headlight Bulb

Your car has two bulbs on each side, four in total. Make sure you are replacing the bulb that is burned out. Your car uses halogen headlight bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.



### 1. Open the hood.

If you need to change a bulb on the passenger's side (on the driver's side on 6-cylinder models), remove the radiator reserve tank.

### 2. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by squeezing the connector to unlock the tab, then slide the connector off the bulb.

### 3. Remove the bulb by turning it approximately one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

### 4. Insert the new bulb into the hole and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.

### 5. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.

### 6. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.

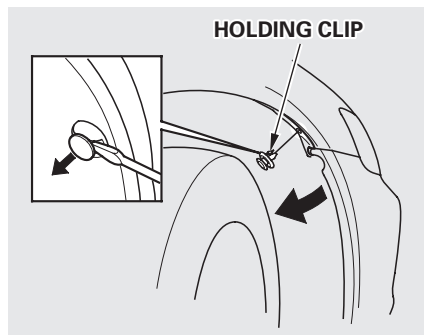
### 7. (Passenger's side on 4-cylinder models, driver's side on 6-cylinder models) Reinstall the radiator reserve tank.

## NOTICE

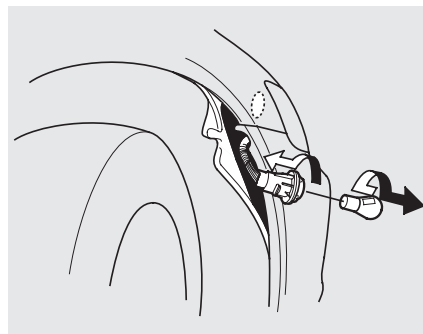
*Halogen headlight bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.*



## Replacing Front Turn Signal and Side Marker Light Bulbs



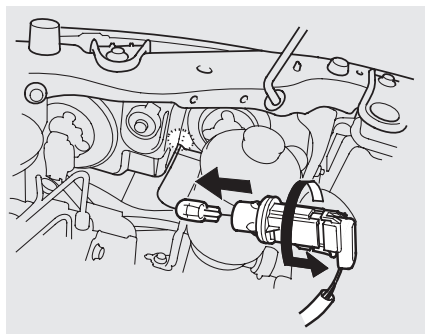
1. If you are changing the bulb on the driver's side, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and turn off the engine. If you are changing the bulb on the passenger's side, turn the steering wheel to the left.



2. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the holding clip from the inner fender.
3. Pull the inner fender cover away from the fender and bumper.
4. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Remove the burned out bulb from the socket by pushing it in and turning the bulb counterclockwise until it unlocks.
6. Install the new bulb in the socket. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
7. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
8. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
9. Put the inner fender cover in place. Install the holding clip. Lock it in place by pushing on the center.

## Replacing a Parking Light Bulb



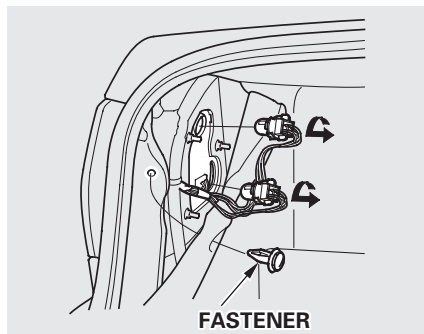
1. The parking light bulb is under the headlight bulb.

Turn the bulb holder one-quarter turn counterclockwise to remove it from the lens.

2. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.  
Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

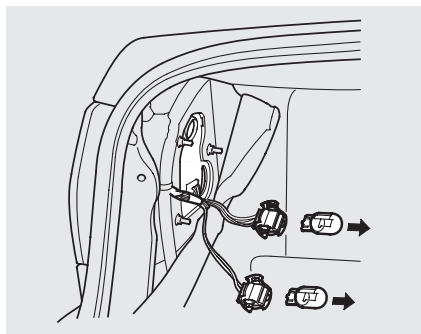
3. Put the bulb holder back into its hole in the lens, and turn it clockwise until it locks.
4. Turn on the parking lights to make sure the new bulb works.

## Replacing Rear Bulbs (in Fenders)



### 1. Open the trunk.

Remove the fastener from the side of the trunk lining by turning it counterclockwise with a coin. Pull the lining back.



### 2. Determine which of the two bulbs is burned out: stop/taillight or turn signal.

### 3. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

### 4. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.

Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

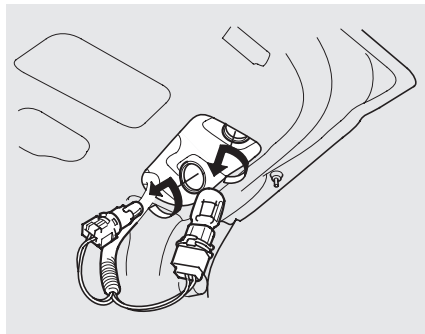
### 5. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly by turning it clockwise until it locks.

### 6. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

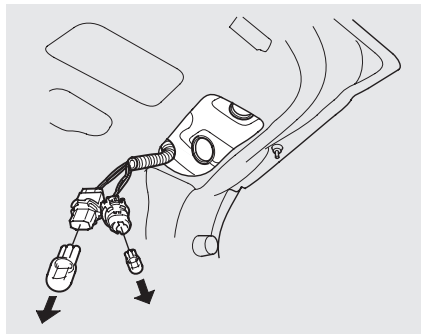
### 7. Reinstall the trunk lining. Make sure it is installed under the edge of the trunk seal.

### 8. Put the fastener in the hole on the side of the trunk lining and push on the center until it locks (the center is flush with the head).

## Replacing Rear Bulbs (in Trunk Lid)



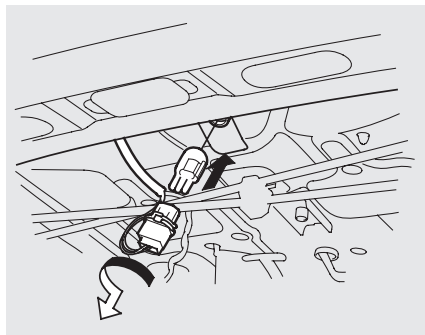
1. Open the trunk.
2. Determine which of the two bulbs is burned out: taillight or back-up light.



3. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
4. Remove the burned out bulb from the socket by pulling it straight out of its socket.

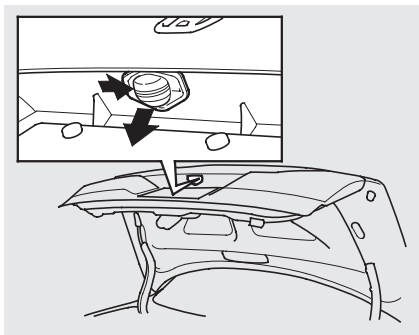
5. Install the new bulb in the socket.
6. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly.
7. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

## Replacing a High-mount Brake Light Bulb

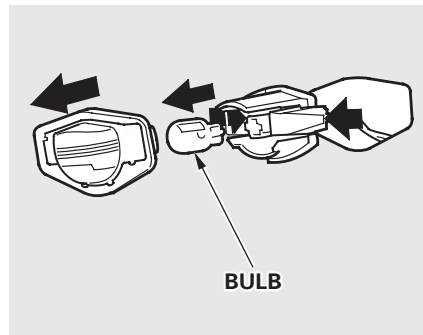


1. Open the trunk and remove the socket from the light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counter-clockwise.
2. Remove the burned-out bulb by pulling it straight out of the socket.
3. Install the new bulb and reinstall the socket. Make sure the new bulb is working.

## Replacing a Rear License Plate Bulb



1. Remove the license light assembly by carefully prying on the left edge of the lens with a flat-tip screwdriver and pulling the assembly out.



2. Remove the lens from the bulb holder by pulling the lens while squeezing the tabs on both sides of the holder.

*CONTINUED*

3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb in until it bottoms in the socket.
4. Turn on the parking lights and check that the new bulb is working.
5. Put the lens back on the bulb holder and push it until it latches.
6. Slide the left side of the light assembly into the hole. Push on the right side to latch the assembly into place.

## Replacing Bulbs in the Interior Lights

The ceiling light, door light and vanity mirror light come apart the same way, but they do not use the same type of bulb.

1. Remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with a fingernail file or a small flat-tip screwdriver. Do not pry on the edge of the housing around the lens.

Door light:

*Not available on U.S. DX and Value Package models*

Pry on the top middle of the lens.

Ceiling light:

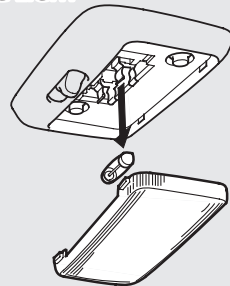
Pry on the front edge of the lens near both sides.

Spotlight:

*Not available on U.S. DX and Value Package models*

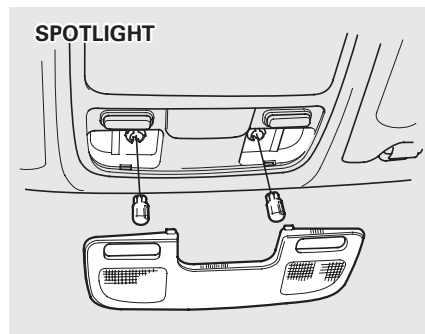
Pry on the front edge in front of both spotlights.

## CEILING LIGHT

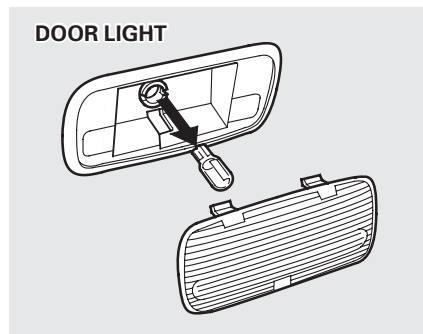


2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of its metal tabs.
3. Push the new bulb into the metal tabs. Snap the lens back in place.

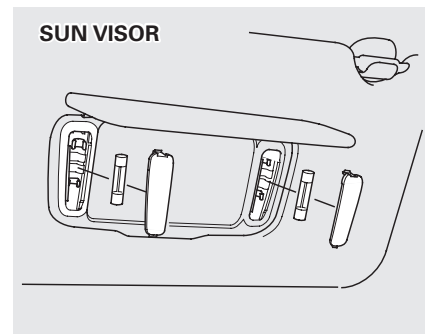
*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package models*



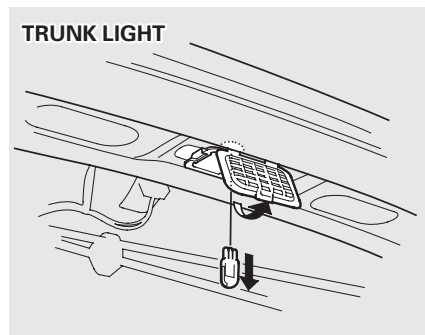
*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package models*



*On all models except U.S. DX and Value Package models*



## Replacing the Trunk Light Bulb



1. Open the trunk. Pull down the trunk light cover.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of its metal tabs.
3. Push the new bulb into the metal tabs.
4. Push the cover back in place.



If you need to park your car for an extended period (more than one month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your car back on the road. If possible, store your car indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Change the engine oil and filter (see page [252](#) ).
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc. are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in Reverse (5-speed manual) or Park (automatic).

- Block the rear wheels.
- If the car is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tires are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the car is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windshield.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and trunk seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and trunk seals.

- Cover the car with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Nonporous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, run the engine for a while periodically (preferably once a month).

If you store your car for 12 months or longer, have your Honda dealer perform the inspections called for in the 24 months/30,000 miles (48,000 km) maintenance schedule (Normal Conditions) as soon as you take it out of storage (see page [240](#) ). The replacements called for in the maintenance schedule are not needed unless the car has actually reached that time or mileage.

Regular cleaning and polishing of your Honda helps to keep it “new” looking. This section gives you hints on how to clean your car and preserve its appearance: the paint, brightwork, wheels and interior. Also included are several things you can do to help prevent corrosion.

Exterior Care.....	304
Washing.....	304
Waxing.....	305
Aluminum Wheels.....	305
Paint Touch-up.....	305
Interior Care.....	306
Carpeting.....	306
Floor Mats.....	306
Fabric.....	307
Vinyl.....	307
Leather.....	307
Seat Belts.....	307
Windows.....	308
Air Fresheners.....	308
Corrosion Protection.....	309
Body Repairs.....	310

## Washing

Frequent washing helps preserve your car's beauty. Dirt and grit can scratch the paint, while tree sap and bird droppings can permanently ruin the finish.

Wash your car in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the car is parked in the sun, move it into the shade and let the exterior cool down before you start.

Only use the solvents and cleaners recommended in this Owner's Manual.

### NOTICE

*Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your car.*

- Rinse the car thoroughly with cool water to remove loose dirt.
- Fill a bucket with cool water. Mix in a mild detergent, such as dishwashing liquid or a product made especially for car washing.
- Wash the car using the water and detergent solution and a soft-bristle brush, sponge, or soft cloth. Start at the top and work your way down. Rinse frequently.
- Check the body for road tar, tree sap, etc. Remove these stains with tar remover or turpentine. Rinse it off immediately so it does not harm the finish. Remember to re-wax these areas, even if the rest of the car does not need waxing.

- When you have washed and rinsed the whole exterior, dry it with a chamois or soft towel. Letting it air-dry will cause dulling and water spots.

As you dry the car, inspect it for chips and scratches that could allow corrosion to start. Repair them with touch-up paint (see page [305](#)).

**Waxing**

Always wash and dry the whole car before waxing it. You should wax your car, including the metal trim, whenever water sits on the surface in large patches. It should form into beads or droplets after waxing.

You should use a quality liquid or paste wax. Apply it according to the instructions on the container. In general, there are two types of products:

**Waxes** — A wax coats the finish and protects it from damage by exposure to sunlight, air pollution, etc. You should use a wax on your Honda when it is new.

**Polishes** — Polishes and cleaner/waxes can restore the shine to paint that has oxidized and lost some of its shine. They normally contain mild abrasives and solvents that remove the top layer of the finish. You

should use a polish on your Honda if the finish does not have its original shine after using a wax.

Cleaning tar, insects, etc. with removers also takes off the wax. Remember to re-wax those areas, even if the rest of the car does not need waxing.

**Aluminum Wheels**

*On U.S. LX with ABS, EX, SE, and EX V-6 and Canada SE, LX V-6, EX-L and EX V-6 models*

Clean your Honda's aluminum alloy wheels as you do the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

The wheels have a protective clear-coat that keeps the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing. Using harsh chemicals, including some commercial wheel cleaners, or stiff brushes can damage this clear-coat. Only use a mild detergent and soft

brush or sponge to clean the wheels.

**Paint Touch-up**

Your dealer has touch-up paint to match your car's color. The color code is printed on a sticker on the driver's doorjamb. Take this code to your dealer so you are sure to get the correct color.

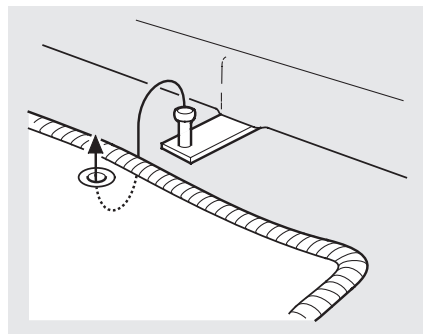
Inspect your car frequently for chips or scratches in the paint. Repair them right away to prevent corrosion of the metal underneath. Use the touch-up paint only on small chips and scratches. More extensive paint damage should be repaired by a professional.

## Carpeting

Vacuum the carpeting frequently to remove dirt. Ground-in dirt will make the carpet wear out faster.

Periodically shampoo the carpet to keep it looking new. Use one of the foam-type carpet cleaners on the market. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner, applying it with a sponge or soft brush. Keep the carpeting as dry as possible by not adding water to the foam.

## Floor Mats



*On all U.S. EX models, Value Package, SE, and LX V-6 models*

The Genuine Honda driver's floor mat that came with your car was designed to be hooked over the floor mat anchor. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward and possibly interfering with the pedals.

If you remove the floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your car.

If you replace it, use a genuine Honda floor mat that is designed to be used with the floor mat anchor in your car.

If you use a non-Honda floor mat in the driver's footwell, make sure it fits properly and that it can be used with the floor mat anchor.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat, otherwise the additional mats may slide forward and interfere with the pedals.

### Fabric

Vacuum dirt and dust out of the material frequently. For general cleaning, use a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water, letting it air dry. To clean off stubborn spots, use a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Test it on a hidden area of the fabric first, to make sure it does not bleach or stain the fabric. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner.

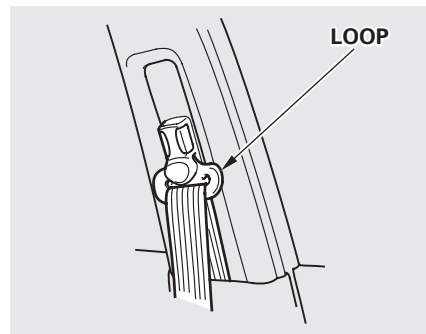
### Vinyl

Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Wipe the vinyl with a soft cloth dampened in a solution of mild soap and water. Use the same solution with a soft-bristle brush on more difficult spots. You can also use commercially-available spray or foam-type vinyl cleaners.

### Leather

*On EX with leather and EX V-6 models*  
Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay particular attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with clear water, then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. If further cleaning is needed, use a soap specifically for leather, such as saddle soap. Apply this soap with a damp, soft cloth. Wipe down and buff as described above.

### Seat Belts



If your seat belts get dirty, you can use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. They can weaken the belt material. Let the belts air-dry before you use the car.

CONTINUED

Dirt build-up in the loops of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the insides of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

### Windows

Clean the windows, inside and out, with a commercially-available glass cleaner. You can also use a mixture of one part white vinegar to ten parts water. This will remove the haze that builds up on the inside of the windows. Use a soft cloth or paper towels to clean all glass and clear plastic surfaces.

#### NOTICE

*The rear window defogger and antenna wires are bonded to the inside of the glass. Wiping vigorously up-and-down can dislodge and break these wires. When cleaning the rear window, use gentle pressure and wipe side-to-side.*

### Air Fresheners

If you want to use an air freshener/deodorizer in the interior of your car, it is best to use a solid type. Some liquid air fresheners contain chemicals that may cause parts of the interior trim and fabric to crack or discolor.

If you use a liquid air freshener, make sure you fasten it securely so it does not spill as you drive.

Two factors normally contribute to causing corrosion in your car:

1. Moisture trapped in body cavities. Dirt and road salt that collects in hollows on the underside of the car stays damp, promoting corrosion in that area.
2. Removal of paint and protective coatings from the exterior and underside of the car.

Many corrosion-preventive measures are built into your Honda. You can help keep your car from corroding by performing some simple periodic maintenance:

- Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you discover them.
- Inspect and clean out the drain holes in the bottom of the doors and body.
- Check the floor coverings for dampness. Carpeting and floor mats may remain damp for a long time, especially in winter. This dampness can eventually cause the floor panels to corrode.

- Use a high-pressure spray to clean the underside of your car. This is especially important in areas that use road salt in winter. It is also a good idea in humid climates and areas subject to salt air. Cars equipped with ABS have a sensor and wiring at each wheel. Be careful not to damage them.
- Have the corrosion-preventive coatings on the underside of your car inspected and repaired periodically.



# Body Repairs

---

Body repairs can affect your car's resistance to corrosion. If your car needs repairs after a collision, pay close attention to the parts used in the repair and the quality of the work.

Make sure the repair facility uses genuine Honda replacement body parts. Some companies make sheet metal pieces that seem to duplicate the original Honda body parts, but are actually inferior in fit, finish, and corrosion resistance. Once installed, they do not give the same high-quality appearance.

When reporting your collision to the insurance company, tell them you want genuine Honda parts used in the repair. Although most insurers recognize the quality of original parts, some may try to specify that the repairs be done with other available parts. You should investigate this before any repairs have begun.

Take your car to your authorized Honda dealer for inspection after the repairs are completed. Your dealer can make sure that quality materials were used, and that corrosion-preventive coatings were applied to all repaired and replaced parts.

This section covers the more-common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your car towed.

Compact Spare Tire.....	312
Changing a Flat Tire .....	313
If Your Engine Won't Start.....	318
Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly.....	319
The Starter Operates Normally .....	319
Jump Starting .....	320
If Your Engine Overheats.....	323
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	325
Charging System Indicator.....	326
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	327
Readiness Codes.....	328
Brake System Indicator .....	329
Closing the Moonroof .....	330
Fuses .....	331
Checking and Replacing.....	332
Emergency Towing .....	336

## Compact Spare Tire

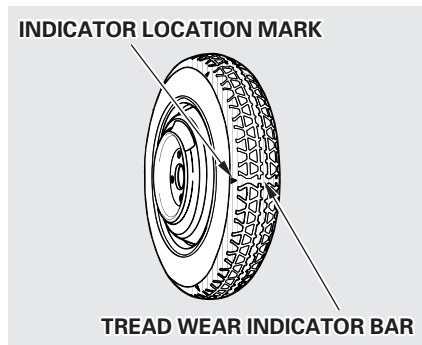
Your car has a compact spare tire that takes up less space. Use this spare tire as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put it back on your car as soon as you can.

Check the inflation pressure of the compact spare tire every time you check the other tires. It should be inflated to:  
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

Follow these precautions whenever you are using the compact spare tire:

- Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) under any circumstances.

- This tire gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces than the regular tire. Use greater caution while driving on this tire.
- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare.
- The wheel of the compact spare tire is designed especially to fit your car. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- *On U.S. LX V-6 and all EX V-6 models* Turn off the Traction Control System (see page 223 ). Driving with the compact spare tire may activate the TCS.



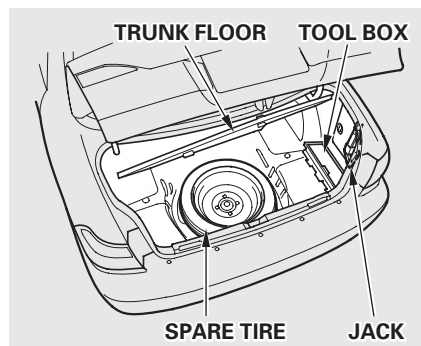
The compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement should be the same size and design tire, mounted on the same wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the compact wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tire.

If you have a flat tire while driving, stop in a safe place to change it. Stopping in traffic or on the shoulder of a busy road is dangerous. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an exit or an area to stop that is far away from the traffic lanes.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The car can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the car when it is supported only by the jack.

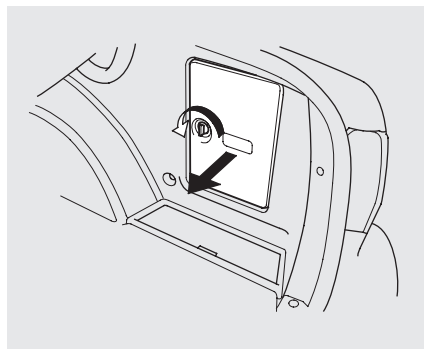


1. Park the car on firm, level and non-slippery ground away from traffic. Put the transmission in Park (automatic) or Reverse (manual). Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK (0). Have all the passengers get out of the car while you change the tire.

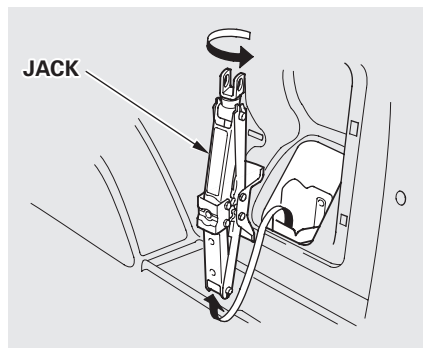
3. Open the trunk. Raise the trunk floor by lifting up on the back edge.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt and take the spare tire out of its well.
5. The tools are in the tool box on the right side of the trunk. Take the tools out of the tool box.

*CONTINUED*

# Changing a Flat Tire



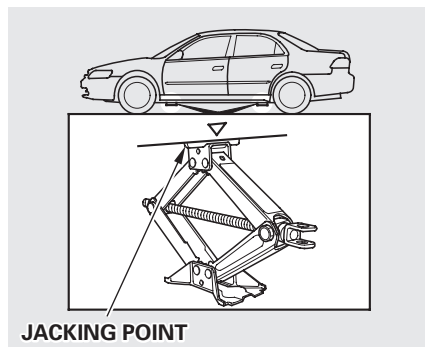
6. The jack is behind a cover in the right fender. Remove the cover by turning the handle counterclockwise, then pulling on the cover.



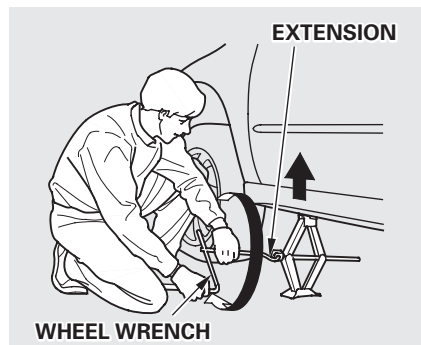
7. Turn the jack's end bracket counterclockwise to loosen it, then remove the jack.



8. Loosen the wheel nuts (four for the 4-cylinder models, five for the V-6 models) 1/2 turn with the wheel wrench.



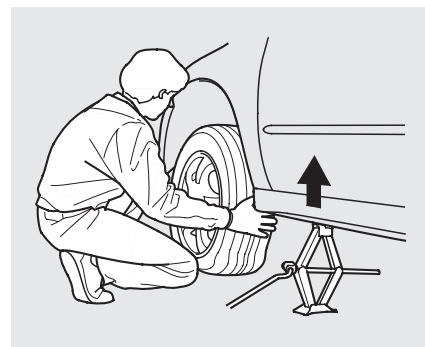
9. Locate the jacking point nearest the tire you need to change. It is pointed to by an arrow molded into the underside of the body. Place the jack under the jacking point. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



10. Use the extension and wheel wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is off the ground.

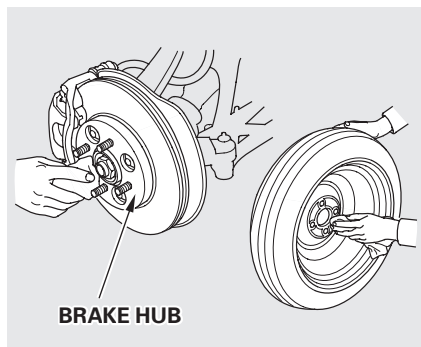
*U.S. DX, Value Package, and LX models:*

Do not attempt to forcibly pry the wheel cover off with a screwdriver or other tool. The wheel cover cannot be removed without first removing the wheel nuts.

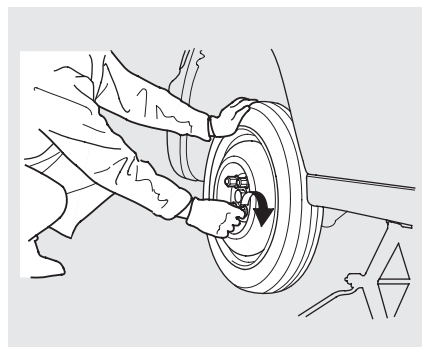


11. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire. Temporarily place the flat tire on the ground with the outside surface of the wheel facing up. Placing the wheel face down could mar its finish.

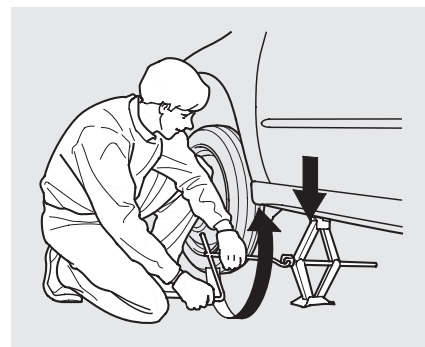
*CONTINUED*



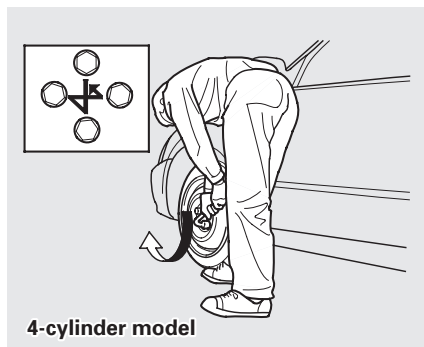
12. Before mounting the spare tire, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully, it may be hot from driving.



13. Put on the spare tire. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten them fully.

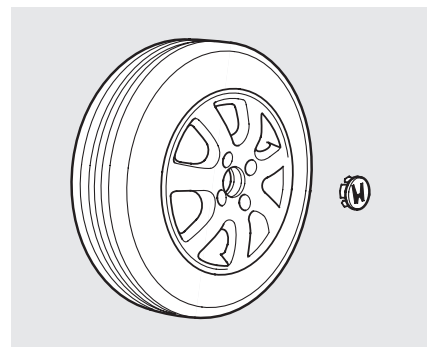
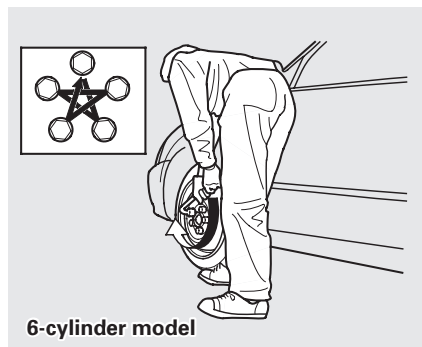


14. Lower the car to the ground and remove the jack.



15. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.

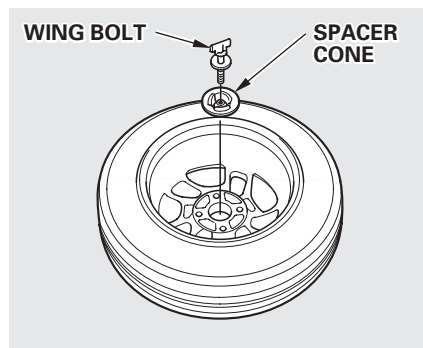
Tighten the wheel nuts to:  
80 lbf·ft (108 N·m , 11 kgf·m)



16. *LX with ABS, SE, EX, EX V-6 models*  
Remove the center cap before storing the flat tire in the trunk well.

CONTINUED





17. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.
18. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt.
19. Secure the flat tire by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole.

20. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place. Replace the cover. Store the tools.

## ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

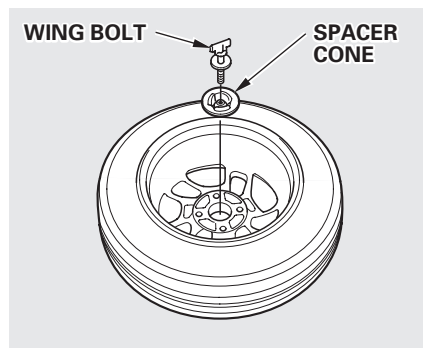
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

21. Store the wheel cover or center cap in the trunk. Make sure it does not get scratched or damaged.

## If Your Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why your engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the key to START (III):

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.



17. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.
18. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt.
19. Secure the flat tire by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole.

20. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place. Replace the cover. Store the tools.

## ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

21. Store the wheel cover or center cap in the trunk. Make sure it does not get scratched or damaged.

## If Your Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why your engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the key to START (III):

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

### Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to START (III), you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound or series of clicks, or nothing at all. Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. If you have a manual transmission, the clutch pedal must be pushed all the way to the floor or the starter will not operate. With an automatic transmission, it must be in Park or Neutral.
- Turn the ignition switch to ON (II). Turn on the headlights and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or don't light at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page [320](#).

- Turn the ignition switch to START (III). If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. (See **Emergency Towing** on page [336](#).)

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page [276](#)). You can then try jump starting the car from a booster battery (see page [320](#)).

### The Starter Operates Normally

In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to START (III), but the engine does not run.

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page [209](#).
- Your car has the Immobilizer System. You should use a properly-coded master or valet key to start the engine (see page [71](#)). A key that is not properly coded will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the dash panel to blink rapidly.

# If Your Engine Won't Start, Jump Starting

- Do you have fuel? Turn the ignition switch to ON (II) for a minute and watch the fuel gauge. The low fuel level warning light may not be working, so you were not reminded to fill the tank.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 331 ).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 336 .

## Jump Starting

If your car's battery has run down, you may be able to start the engine by using a booster battery. Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

### **WARNING**

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start a Honda with an automatic transmission by pushing or pulling it.

To jump start your car, follow these directions closely:

1. Open the hood and check the physical condition of the battery (see page 276 ). In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or like ice, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

### **NOTICE**

*If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.*

2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: climate control, stereo system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in Neutral or Park, and set the parking brake.

# If Your Engine Won't Start, Jump Starting

- Do you have fuel? Turn the ignition switch to ON (II) for a minute and watch the fuel gauge. The low fuel level warning light may not be working, so you were not reminded to fill the tank.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 331 ).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 336 .

## Jump Starting

If your car's battery has run down, you may be able to start the engine by using a booster battery. Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

### **WARNING**

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start a Honda with an automatic transmission by pushing or pulling it.

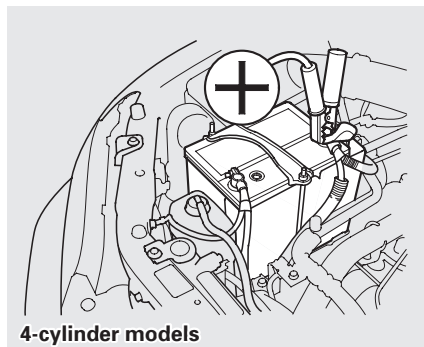
To jump start your car, follow these directions closely:

1. Open the hood and check the physical condition of the battery (see page 276 ). In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or like ice, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

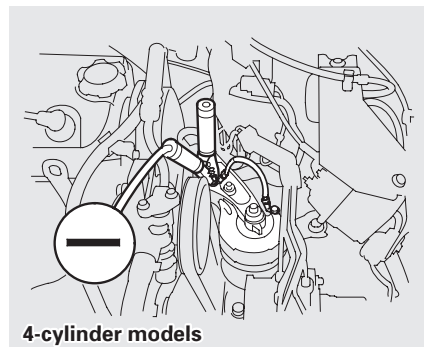
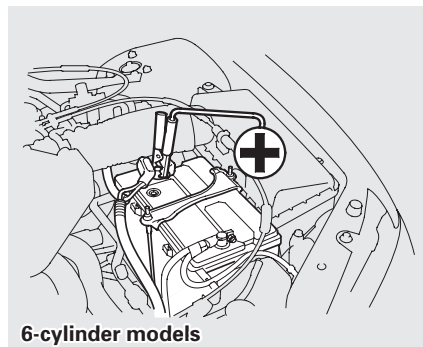
### **NOTICE**

*If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.*

2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: climate control, stereo system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in Neutral or Park, and set the parking brake.

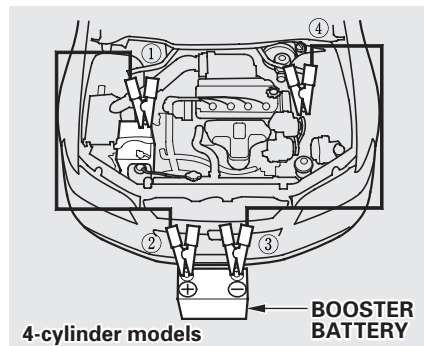
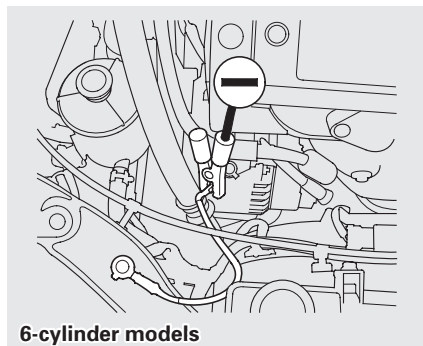


3. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your Honda's battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.



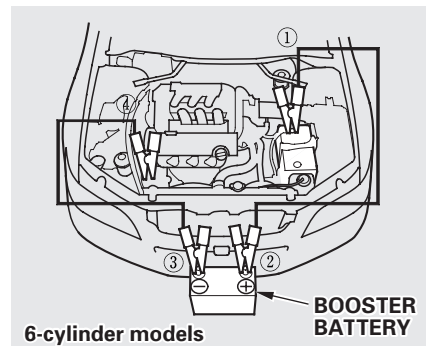
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the grounding strap as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.
5. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.

*CONTINUED*



The numbers in the illustrations show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

6. Start your car. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check the jumper cable connections to make sure they have good metal-to-metal contact.



7. Once your car is running, disconnect the negative cable from your car, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your car, then the booster battery.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the car until all are disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

The pointer of your car's temperature gauge should stay in the mid-range under most conditions. It may go higher if you are driving up a long steep hill on a very hot day. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason.

### NOTICE

*Driving with the temperature gauge pointer at the red mark can cause serious damage to your engine.*

Your car can overheat for several reasons, such as lack of coolant or a mechanical problem. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the hood. In either case, you should take immediate action.

### WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in Neutral or Park, and set the parking brake. Turn off the heating and cooling system and all other accessories. Turn on the hazard warning indicators.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the hood, turn off the engine.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading (climbing a long, steep hill on a hot day with the A/C running, for example), the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge comes down to the mid-point then continue driving.

CONTINUED



4. If the temperature gauge stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the hood.
6. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page [336](#) ).
7. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank (see page [200](#) ). If the level is below the MIN mark, add coolant to halfway between the MIN and MAX marks.
8. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may also have to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the pointer

reaches the middle of the temperature gauge, or lower, before checking the radiator.

### **WARNING**

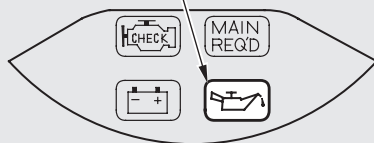
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

9. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. This releases any remaining pressure in the cooling system. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap and turn it until it comes off.

10. Start the engine and set the temperature control dial to maximum (climate control to FULL AUTO at 90°F/32°C). Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.
11. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine and watch the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair. (See **Emergency Towing** on page [336](#) .)
12. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.

## LOW OIL PRESSURE INDICATOR



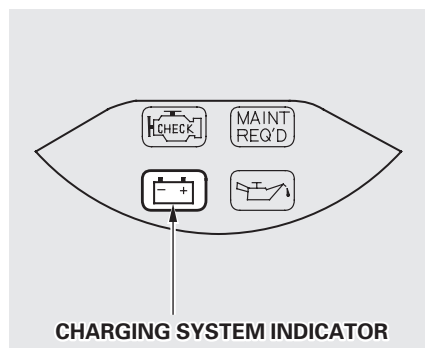
This indicator should light when the ignition switch is ON (II), and go out after the engine starts. It should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing, it indicates that the oil pressure dropped very low for a moment, then recovered. If the indicator stays on with the engine running, it shows that the engine has lost oil pressure and serious engine damage is possible. In either case, you should take immediate action.

## NOTICE

*Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the car stopped.*

1. Safely pull off the road and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning indicators.
2. Let the car sit for a minute. Open the hood and check the oil level (see page 198 ). Although oil level and oil pressure are not directly connected, an engine that is very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving maneuvers.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 250 ).

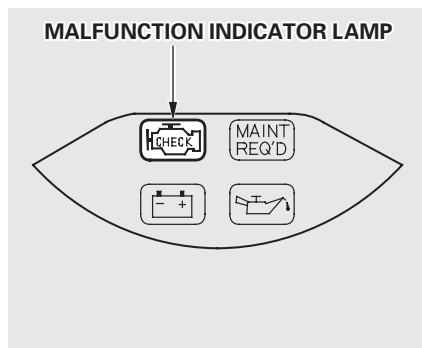
4. Start the engine and watch the oil pressure indicator. If the light does not go out within ten seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving. (See **Emergency Towing** on page 336 .)



This indicator should come on when the ignition switch is ON (II), and go out after the engine starts. If it comes on brightly when the engine is running, it indicates that the charging system has stopped charging the battery.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories: radio, heater, A/C, rear defogger, cruise control, etc. Try not to use other electrically-operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running and take extra care not to stall it. Starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

By eliminating as much of the electrical load as possible, you can drive several miles (kilometers) before the battery is too discharged to keep the engine running. Drive to a service station or garage where you can get technical assistance.



## *On 4-cylinder LEV*

This indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). If it comes on at any other time, it indicates one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your car's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause your car to put out excessive emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

## *On V6 and 4-cylinder ULEV*

This indicator should light when the ignition switch is ON (II), and go out after the engine starts. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your car's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause your car to put out excessive emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If you have recently refueled your car, the cause of this indicator coming on could be a loose or missing fuel fill cap. Check the cap and tighten it until it clicks several times. Replace the fuel fill cap if it is missing. Tightening the cap will not make the indicator turn off immediately; it takes at least three driving trips.

If the indicator remains on past three driving trips, or the fuel cap was not loose or missing, have the car checked by the dealer as soon as possible. Drive moderately until the dealer has inspected the problem. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

You should also have the dealer inspect your car if this indicator comes on repeatedly, even though it may turn off as you continue driving.

## **NOTICE**

*If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your car's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your car's warranties.*

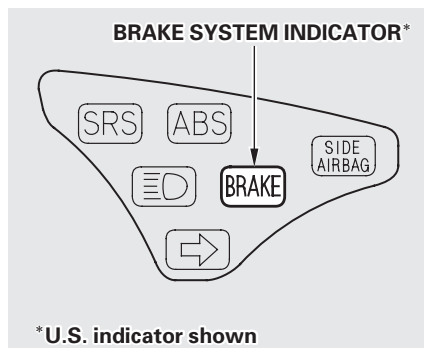
## Readiness Codes

*4-cylinder ULEV, V6*

Your car has certain “readiness codes” that are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. In some states, part of the emissions testing is to make sure these codes are set. If they are not set, the test cannot be completed.

If your car’s battery has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes are erased. It takes several days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again.

If possible, do not take your car for a state emissions test until the readiness codes are set. To check if they are set, turn the ignition ON (II), but do not start the engine. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks 5 times, the readiness codes are not set. See State Emissions Testing on pages [352](#) and [353](#) .



The Brake System Indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch ON (II). It is a reminder to check the parking brake. It comes on and stays lit if you do not fully release the parking brake.

If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a problem with the car's brake system. In most cases, the problem is a low fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 267). If the fluid level is low, take the car to your dealer and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. Because of the brake system's dual-circuit design, a problem in one part of the system will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the car begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal. The distance needed to stop will be much longer.

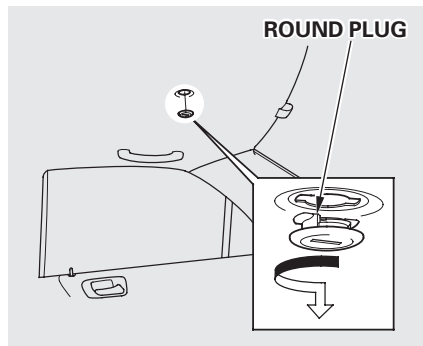
Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the longer distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the car. You should have it towed, and repaired as soon as possible. (See **Emergency Towing** on page 336.)

If you must drive the car a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and cautiously.

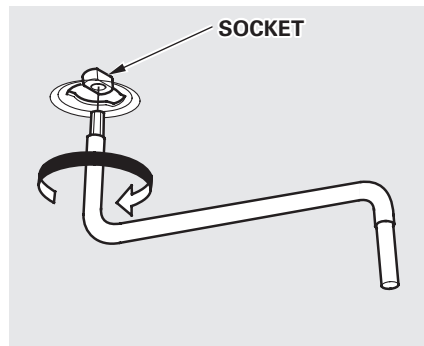
# Closing the Moonroof

If the electric motor will not close the moonroof, do the following:

1. Check the fuse for the moonroof motor (see page 331 ). If the fuse is blown, replace it with one of the same or lower rating.
2. Try closing the moonroof. If the new fuse blows immediately or the moonroof motor still does not operate, you can close the moonroof manually.
3. Get the moonroof wrench out of the tool kit in the trunk.

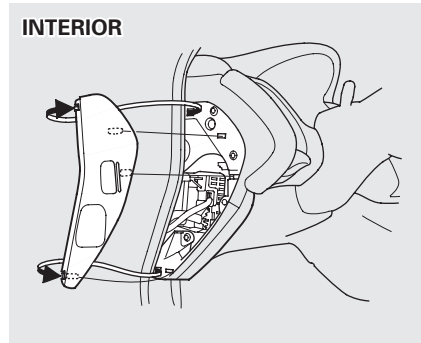


4. Use a screwdriver or coin to remove the round plug in the center of the headliner.

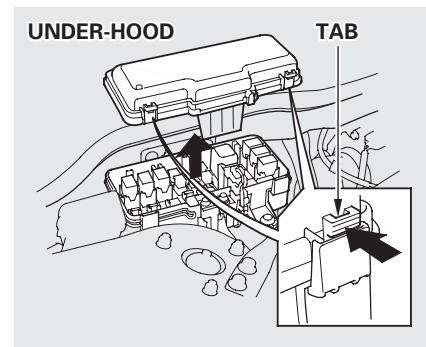


5. Insert the moonroof wrench into the socket behind this plug. Turn the wrench until the moonroof is fully closed.
6. Remove the wrench. Replace the round plug.

All the electrical circuits in your car have fuses to protect them from a short circuit or overload. These fuses are located in three fuse boxes.



The interior fuse boxes are located on each side of the dashboard. To open an interior fuse box, open the car door. Pull the cover open, then take it out of its hinges by pulling it toward you.



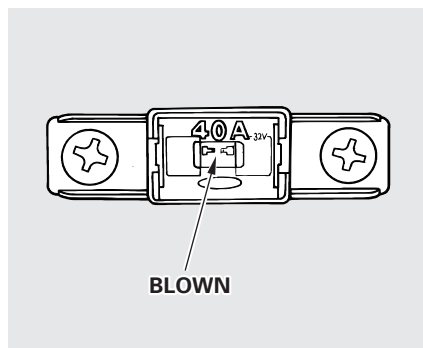
The under-hood fuse box is located in the back of the engine compartment on the passenger's side. To open it, push the tabs as shown.



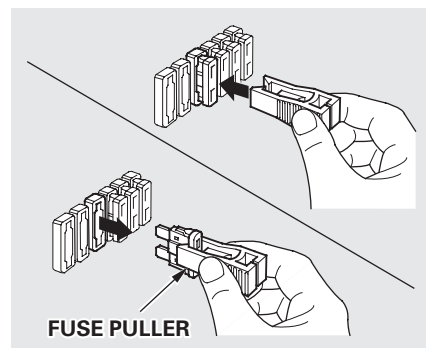
## Checking and Replacing Fuses

If something electrical in your car stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages [334](#) and [335](#), or the diagram on the fuse box lid, which fuse or fuses control that component. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is not the cause. Replace any blown fuses and check the component's operation.

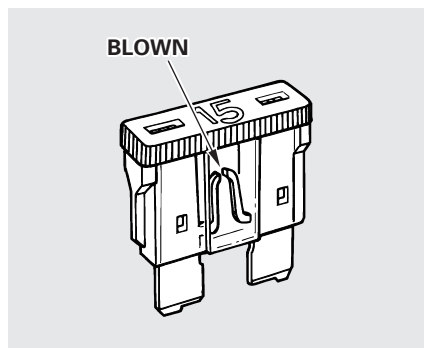
1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK (0). Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.
2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.



3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-hood fuse box by looking through the top at the wire inside. Removing these fuses requires a Phillips-head screwdriver.



4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-hood fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse boxes by pulling out each fuse with the fuse puller provided in the under-hood fuse box.



5. Look for a burned wire inside the fuse. If it is burned, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

If you cannot drive the car without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the cigarette lighter or radio).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate anything wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

### NOTICE

*Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.*

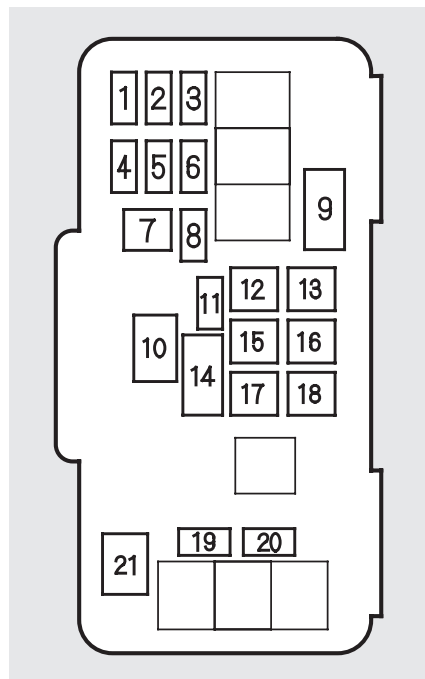
6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem in your car. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit and have your car checked by a qualified mechanic.

*On EX, EX V-6, SE, and U.S. Value Package models*

If the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio you will see "Code" in the frequency display. Use the Preset buttons to enter the five-digit code (see page [183](#) ).

*CONTINUED*

## UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX

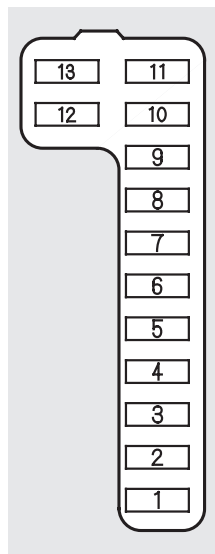


No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	20 A	Left Headlight
2	(7.5A)	(Dimmer Relay)
3	20 A	Right Headlight
4	20 A	ABS F/S
5	20 A	Stop
6	15 A	ACG
7	30 A	ABS Motor
8	15 A	Hazard
9	—	Spare Fuse
10	100 A	Battery
11	20 A	Cooling Fan

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
12	40 A	Back Up, ACC
13	40 A	Power Window Motor
14	—	Spare Fuse
15	40 A	Power Seat
16	20 A	BSC
17	40 A	Heater Motor
18	40 A	Rear Defroster
19	20 A	Heated Seat
20	20 A	Condenser Fan
21	50 A	IG1 Main

# INTERIOR FUSE BOXES

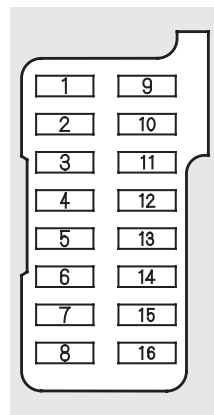
## DRIVER'S SIDE



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	15 A	IG1 Fuel Pump
2	10 A	IG1 SRS
3	7.5 A	IG2 HAC
4	7.5 A	R/C Mirror
5	7.5 A	IG2 Day Light*
6	15 A	ECU (ECM/PCM), Cruise Control
7	7.5 A	IG1 Moonroof, Washer
8	7.5 A	ACC
9	7.5 A	Instrument Panel, Back-up Lights
10	7.5 A	IG1 Turn Signals
11	15 A	IG1 Coil
12	30 A	IG1 Wiper
13	7.5 A	STS

\* : On Canadian models

## PASSENGER'S SIDE



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	30 A	Moonroof
2	20 A	Driver Power Seat Recline
3	20 A	Assistant Power Seat Recline
4	20 A	Driver Power Seat Slide
5	20 A	Assistant Power Seat Slide
6	10 A	Daytime Running Light*
7	20 A	Rear Left Power Window
8	20 A	Front Right Power Window
9	20 A	Radio, Cigarette Lighter
10	10 A	Small Lights
11	7.5 A	Interior Light, Courtesy Lights
12	20 A	Power Door Locks
13	7.5 A	Clock
14	7.5 A	ABS Motor Check
15	20 A	Front Left Power Window
16	20 A	Rear Right Power Window

\* : On Canadian models

If your car needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or, if you belong to one, an organization that provides roadside assistance. Never tow your car behind another vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

There are three popular types of professional towing equipment.

**Flat-bed Equipment** — The operator loads your car on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your Honda.**

**Wheel-lift Equipment** — The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the tires (front or rear) and lift them off the ground. The other two tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your Honda.**

**Sling-type Equipment** — The tow truck uses metal cables with hooks on the ends. These hooks go around parts of the frame or suspension and the cables lift that end of the car off the ground. Your car's suspension and body can be seriously damaged. **This method of towing is unacceptable.**

If your Honda cannot be transported by flat-bed, it should be towed by wheel-lift equipment with the front wheels off the ground. If due to damage, your car must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do the following:

**5-speed Manual Transmission**

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission to Neutral.

**Automatic Transmission:**

- Release the parking brake.
- Start the engine.
- Shift to D4, then to N.
- Turn off the engine.

## NOTICE

*Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your car must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.*

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the car no farther than 50 miles (80 km), and keep the speed below 35 mph (55 km/h).

If you decide to tow your car with all four wheels on the ground, make sure you use a properly-designed and attached tow bar. Prepare the car for towing as described above, and leave the ignition switch in Accessory (I) so the steering wheel does not lock. Make sure the radio and any items plugged into the accessory power socket are turned off so they do not run down the battery.

### NOTICE

*The steering system can be damaged if the steering wheel is locked. Leave the ignition switch in Accessory (I), and make sure the steering wheel turns freely before you begin towing.*

### NOTICE

*Trying to lift or tow your car by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the car's weight.*

The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your Honda, and the locations of the identification numbers. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle's tires and emissions control systems.

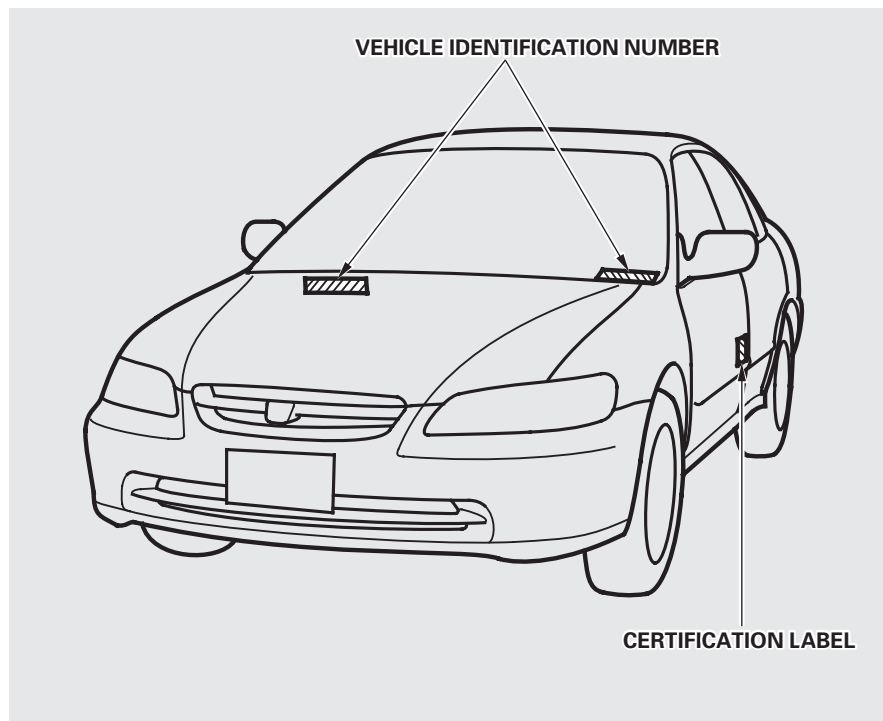
Identification Numbers.....	340
Specifications .....	342
DOT Tire Quality Grading .....	345
Treadwear .....	345
Traction.....	345
Temperature .....	346

Oxygenated Fuels.....	347
Driving in Foreign Countries .....	348
Emissions Controls.....	349
The Clean Air Act.....	349
Crankcase Emissions Control System.....	349
Evaporative Emissions Control System.....	349
Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery .....	349
Exhaust Emissions Controls ....	350
PGM-FI System .....	350
Ignition Timing Control System.....	350
Three Way Catalytic Converter.....	350
Replacement Parts.....	350
Three Way Catalytic Converter...	351
State Emissions Testing .....	352

# Identification Numbers

Your car has several identifying numbers located in various places.

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is the 17-digit number your Honda dealer uses to register your car for warranty purposes. It is also necessary for licensing and insuring your car. The easiest place to find the VIN is on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard. You can see it by looking through the windshield on the driver's side. It is also on the Certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb, and is stamped on the engine compartment bulkhead. The VIN is also provided in bar code on the Certification label.

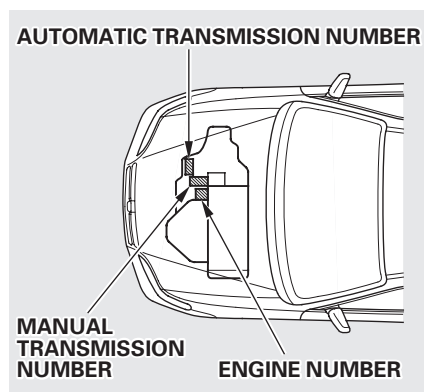




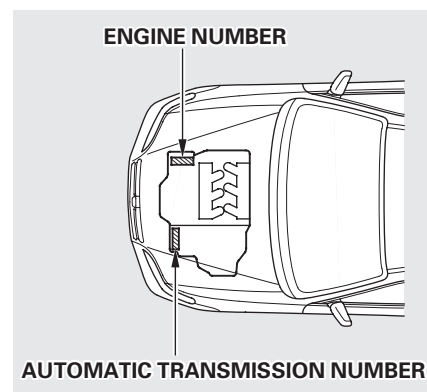
The Engine Number is stamped into the engine block. It is on the front.

The Transmission Number is on a label on top of the transmission.

## 4-cylinder Models



## 6-cylinder Models



# Specifications

## Dimensions

Length	188.8 in (4,795 mm)
Width	70.3 in (1,785 mm)
Height	56.9 in (1,445 mm) 57.3 in (1,455 mm) *
Wheelbase	106.9 in (2,715 mm)
Track	Front 61.2 in (1,555 mm) Rear 60.4 in (1,535 mm)

\* : 6-cylinder models

## Weights

Gross vehicle weight rating	See the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb.
-----------------------------	--

## Air Conditioning

Refrigerant type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge quantity	25 – 27 oz (700 – 750 g) 16 – 18 oz (450 – 500 g)*
Lubricant type	ND-OIL8

\* : 6-cylinder models

## Capacities

Fuel tank	Approx. 17.12 US gal (64.8 ℓ , 14.26 Imp gal)
-----------	--

## Capacities

Engine coolant	Change* <sup>1</sup>	
	Manual	1.45 US gal (5.5 ℓ , 1.21 Imp gal)
	Automatic	1.43 US gal (5.4 ℓ , 1.19 Imp gal) 1.48 US gal (5.6 ℓ , 1.23 Imp gal) * <sup>3</sup>
	Total	
Engine oil	Manual	1.85 US gal (7.0 ℓ , 1.54 Imp gal)
	Automatic	1.82 US gal (6.9 ℓ , 1.52 Imp gal) 1.98 US gal (7.5 ℓ , 1.65 Imp gal) * <sup>3</sup>
	Change* <sup>2</sup>	
	Including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ , 3.8 Imp qt) 4.6 US qt (4.4 ℓ , 3.9 Imp qt) * <sup>3</sup>
Manual trans- mission oil	Without filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ , 3.5 Imp qt)
	Total	5.9 US qt (5.6 ℓ , 4.9 Imp qt) 5.3 US qt (5.0 ℓ , 4.4 Imp qt) * <sup>3</sup>
	Change	2.0 US qt (1.9 ℓ , 1.7 Imp qt)
	Total	2.1 US qt (2.0 ℓ , 1.8 Imp qt)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ , 2.2 Imp qt) 3.1 US qt (2.9 ℓ , 2.6 Imp qt) * <sup>3</sup>
	Total	6.4 US qt (6.1 ℓ , 5.4 Imp qt) 7.6 US qt (7.2 ℓ , 6.3 Imp qt) * <sup>3</sup>
	U.S. Cars	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ , 2.2 Imp qt)
	Canada Cars	4.8 US qt (4.5 ℓ , 4.0 Imp qt)

\* 1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine.

Reserve tank capacity: 0.16 US gal (0.6 ℓ , 0.13 Imp gal)

\* 2 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine.

\* 3 : 6-cylinder models

## Lights

Headlights	High	12 V — 60 W (HB3)
	Low	12 V — 51 W (HB4)
Front turn signal/side marker lights		12 V — 24/2.2 CP
Front parking lights		12 V — 3 CP
Rear turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W
Stop/Taillights		12 V — 21/5 W
Taillight		12 V — 3 CP
High-mount brake light		12 V — 21 W
Back-up lights		12 V — 21 W
License plate lights		12 V — 3 CP
Ceiling light		12 V — 7 W
Trunk lights		12 V — 5 W
Door courtesy lights		12 V — 2 CP
Vanity mirror light		12 V — 1.8 W

## Battery

Capacity	4-cylinder	12 V — 52 AH/5 HR
	6-cylinder	12 V — 55 AH/5 HR

## Fuses

Interior	See page <a href="#">335</a> or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door on each side of the dashboard.
Under-hood	See page <a href="#">334</a> or the fuse box cover.

## Engine

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC, SOHC VTEC 4-cylinder, SOHC 6-cylinder (V6), gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.39 x 3.82 in (86.0 x 97.0 mm) 3.39 x 3.39 in (86.0 x 86.0 mm) <sup>*3</sup>
Displacement	137.5 cu-in (2,254 cm <sup>3</sup> ) 182.8 cu-in (2,997 cm <sup>3</sup> ) <sup>*3</sup>
Compression ratio	8.8 : 1 <sup>*1</sup> 9.3 : 1 <sup>*2</sup> 9.4 : 1 <sup>*3</sup>
Spark plugs	See spark plug maintenance section pages <a href="#">273</a> and <a href="#">275</a> .

\* 1 : DX, Value Package

\* 2 : LX, EX, SE

\* 3 : 6-cylinder models

## Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
	Rear	0.08 in (2.0 mm)
Camber	Front	0°
	Rear	—0°30'
Caster	Front	3°00'

CONTINUED

# Specifications

---

## Tires

Size	Front/Rear	P195/70R14 90S <sup>*1</sup> P195/65R15 89H <sup>*2</sup> P205/65R15 92V <sup>*4</sup>
	Spare	T125/70D15 <sup>*3</sup> T135/90D15 <sup>*4</sup>
Pressure	Front/Rear	29 psi (200 kPa , 2.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>*1</sup> 30 psi (210 kPa , 2.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>*2 *4</sup>
	Spare	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

\* 1 : DX, Value Package

\* 2 : LX, EX, SE

\* 3 : 4-cylinder models

\* 4 : 6-cylinder models

The tires on your car meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and the maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200**

**Traction AA**

**Temperature A**

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction — AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**Warning:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature — A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**Warning:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Some conventional gasolines are being blended with alcohol or an ether compound. These gasolines are collectively referred to as oxygenated fuels. To meet clean air standards, some areas of the United States and Canada use oxygenated fuels to help reduce emissions.

If you use an oxygenated fuel, be sure it is unleaded and meets the minimum octane rating requirement.

Before using an oxygenated fuel, try to confirm the fuel's contents. Some states/provinces require this information to be posted on the pump.

The following are the U.S. EPA and Canadian CGSB approved percentages of oxygenates:

**ETHANOL** (ethyl or grain alcohol)  
You may use gasoline containing up to 10 percent ethanol by volume. Gasoline containing ethanol may be marketed under the name "Gasohol."

**MTBE** (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether)  
You may use gasoline containing up to 15 percent MTBE by volume.

**METHANOL** (methyl or wood alcohol)  
Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel that contains methanol. Methanol can corrode metal parts in the fuel system, and also damage plastic and rubber components. This damage would not be covered by your warranties.

If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

Fuel system damage or performance problems resulting from the use of an oxygenated fuel containing more than the percentages of oxygenates given above are not covered under warranty.

If you are planning to take your Honda outside the U.S. or Canada, contact the tourist bureaus in the areas you will be traveling in to find out about the availability of unleaded gasoline with the proper octane rating.

If unleaded gasoline is not available, be aware that using leaded gasoline in your Honda will affect performance and fuel mileage, and damage its emissions controls. It will no longer comply with U.S. and Canadian emissions regulations, and will be illegal to operate in North America. To bring your car back into compliance will require the replacement of several components, such as the oxygen sensors and the three way catalytic converter. These replacements are not covered under warranty.



The burning of gasoline in your car's engine produces several byproducts. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NOx) and hydrocarbons (HC). Gasoline evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NOx, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NOx and HC react to form photochemical "smog." Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.

## **The Clean Air Act**

The United States Clean Air Act\* sets standards for automobile emissions. It also requires that automobile manufacturers explain to owners how their emissions controls work and what to do to maintain them. This section summarizes how the emissions controls work. Scheduled maintenance is on page [240](#).

\* In Canada, Honda vehicles comply with the Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (CMVSS) for Emissions valid at the time they are manufactured.

## **Crankcase Emissions Control System**

Your car has a Positive Crankcase Ventilation System. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The Positive Crankcase Ventilation valve routes them from

the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

## **Evaporative Emissions Control System**

As gasoline evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal adsorbs the vapor. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapor is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.

## **Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery**

The Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery (ORVR) system captures the fuel vapors during refueling. The vapors are adsorbed in a canister filled with activated carbon. While driving, the fuel vapors are drawn into the engine and burned off.

## Exhaust Emissions Controls

The exhaust emissions controls include three systems: PGM-FI, Ignition Timing Control and Three Way Catalytic Converter. These three systems work together to control the engine's combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NOx that comes out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

### *PGM-FI System*

The PGM-FI System uses sequential multiport fuel injection. It has three subsystems: Air Intake, Engine Control, and Fuel Control. The Engine Control Module (ECM) or the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

### *Ignition Timing Control System*

This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO and NOx produced.

### *Three Way Catalytic Converter*

The three way catalytic converter is in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, it converts HC, CO, and NOx in the engine's exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), dinitrogen (N<sub>2</sub>), and water vapor.

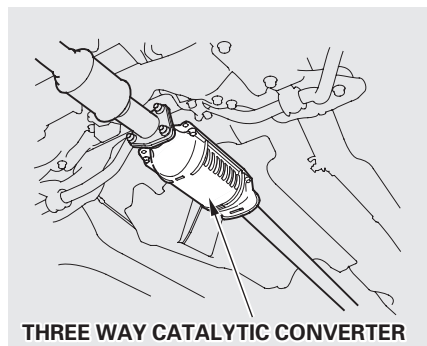
## Replacement Parts

The emissions control systems are designed and certified to work together in reducing emissions to levels that comply with the Clean Air Act. To make sure the emissions remain low, you should use only new Genuine Honda replacement parts or their equivalent for repairs. Using lower quality parts may increase the emissions from your car.

The emissions control systems are covered by warranties separate from the rest of your car. Read your warranty manual for more information.

The three way catalytic converter contains precious metals that serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converter is referred to as a three-way catalyst, since it acts on HC, CO, and NOx. A replacement unit must be an original Honda part or its equivalent.

The three way catalytic converter must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your car away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.



A defective three way catalytic converter contributes to air pollution, and can impair your engine's performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your car's three way catalytic converter.

- Always use unleaded gasoline. Even a small amount of leaded gasoline can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converter ineffective.

- Keep the engine tuned-up.
- Have your car diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, backfiring, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.

## Testing of Readiness Codes

If you take your vehicle for a state emissions test shortly after the battery has been disconnected or gone dead, it may not pass the test. This is because of certain “readiness codes” that must be set in the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. These codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If the testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you will be requested to return at a later date to complete the test. If you must get the vehicle re-tested within the next two or three days, you can condition the vehicle for re-testing by doing the following.

- Make sure the gas tank is nearly, but not completely, full (around 3/4).
- Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 8 hours or more.
- Make sure the ambient temperature is between 20° and 95°F.

- Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine and let it idle for 20 seconds.
- Keep the vehicle in Park (automatic transmission) or Neutral (manual transmission). Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (approximately 3 minutes).

- Select a nearby lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D<sub>4</sub> (A/T) or 5th (M/T). Do not use the cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).

- Then drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see your Honda dealer.

Customer Relations	
Information.....	356
Warranty Coverages .....	357
Reporting Safety Defects	
(U.S. Vehicles) .....	358
Authorized Manuals .....	359

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals. They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's management. The Service Manager or General Manager can help. Almost all problems are solved in this way.

If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact the Automobile Customer Service Office.

## U.S. Owners:

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.  
Automobile Customer Service  
Mail Stop 500-2N-7A  
1919 Torrance Boulevard  
Torrance, California 90501-2746  
(800) 999-1009

## Canadian Owners:

### **CUSTOMER RELATIONS RELATIONS AVEC LA CLIENTÉLE**

Honda Canada Inc.  
715 Milner Avenue  
Toronto, ON  
M1B 2K8

Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9

Fax: Toll-free 1-877-939-0909  
Toronto (416) 287-4776

## In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Bella International  
P.O. Box 190816  
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00919-0816

(787) 250-4318

When you call or write, please give us this information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (see page [340](#))
- Name and address of the dealer who services your car
- Date of purchase
- Mileage on your car
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the car to you

## U.S. Owners

Your new Honda is covered by these warranties:

***New Car Limited Warranty*** — covers your new vehicle, except for the battery, emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

### ***Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions***

***Performance Warranty*** — these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read the warranty manual for exact information.

***Original Equipment Battery Limited Warranty*** — this warranty gives up to 100 percent credit toward a replacement battery.

***Seat Belt Limited Warranty*** — a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered for the useful life of the vehicle.

***Rust Perforation Limited Warranty*** — all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

***Accessory Limited Warranty*** — Genuine Honda Accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty manual for details.

***Replacement Parts Limited Warranty*** — covers all genuine Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

***Replacement Battery Limited Warranty*** — provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from a Honda dealer.

***Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty*** — provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the car.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2002 Honda Warranty Information booklet that came with your car for precise information on warranty coverages. Your Honda's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

## Canadian Owners

Please refer to the 2002 Warranty Manual that came with your car.



## Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles)

---

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in Washington D.C. area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

# **Purchasing Factory Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)**

The following publications covering the operation and servicing of your vehicle can be obtained from Helm Incorporated, either by filling out the attached form or, for credit card holders, calling the toll-free phone number on the form. For manuals prior to the year shown below, contact Helm Incorporated, P.O. Box 07280, Detroit, Michigan 48207, or call 1-800-782-4356.

Publication Form Number	Form Description	Price Each*
61S8400	1998-2002 Honda Accord 2/4 Door L4 Service Manual Base Book	\$68.00
61S8401	1998-2002 Honda Accord 2/4 Door V6 Service Manual Supplement	\$38.00
61S8400EL	1998-2002 Honda Accord 2/4 Door L4/V6 Electrical Troubleshooting Manual	\$48.00
61S8030	1998-2002 Honda Accord 2/4 Door L4/V6 Body Repair Manual	\$42.00
31S84640	2002 Honda Accord 4 Door L4/V6 Owner's Manual Base Book	\$32.00
HON-R	Order Form for Previous Years- Indicate Year and Model Desired	FREE
* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.		

*Valid only for sales within the U.S. Canadian owners should contact their authorized Honda dealer.*

<b>ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-782-4356</b> (NOTE: For Credit Card Holder Orders Only) Monday-Friday 8:00 A.M. — 6:00 P.M. EST
<b>MINIMUM CREDIT CARD PURCHASE \$10.00</b>

**OR**

By completing this form you can order the materials desired. You can pay by check or money order, or charge to your credit card. Mail to Helm Incorporated at the address shown on the back of the order form.

<b>2002 HON</b>	PUBLICATION NUMBER	VEHICLE MODEL		Qty	Price Each*	Total Price
		Name	Year			
* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.  Orders are mailed within 10 days. Please allow adequate time for delivery.					TOTAL MATERIAL	
					Mich. Purchases Add 6% Sales Tax	
					HANDLING CHARGE	\$6.00
					GRAND TOTAL	

<b>PAYMENT</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Check or money order enclosed payable to Helm Inc – U.S. funds only. Do not send cash
	<input type="checkbox"/> MasterCard <input type="checkbox"/> VISA <input type="checkbox"/> Check here if your billing address is different from the shipping address shown above.
	Account Number _____ Expiration: Mo. Yr. _____
	<hr/> <p>CUSTOMER SIGNATURE</p> <hr/> <p>DATE</p>

## HELM

P.O. BOX 07280, DETROIT, MICHIGAN 48207-1-800-782-4356

This manual describes the procedures involved in the replacement of damaged body parts.

<b>A</b>	
Accessories and Modifications ....	202
Accessories.....	202
Additional Safety Precaution....	202
Modifications .....	202
ACCESSORY (Ignition Key Position) .....	73
Accessory Power Socket .....	100
Additives, Engine Oil.....	252
Airbag (SRS) .....	9
Air Cleaner Element.....	269
Air Conditioning.....	104
Maintenance.....	281
Usage .....	104
Air Pressure, Tires .....	284
Alcohol in Gasoline.....	347
Antifreeze .....	255
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)	
Description .....	220
Indicator.....	57, 221
Operation.....	220
Anti-theft Steering Column Lock ..	72
Appearance Care .....	303
Audio System.....	119, 131, 147, 164
Automatic Speed Control.....	185

Automatic Transmission.....	212
Capacity, Fluid .....	342
Checking Fluid Level.....	263, 264
Shifting.....	212
Shift Lever Position Indicator ..	213
Shift Lever Positions .....	213
Shift Lock Release.....	216

<b>B</b>	
Battery	
Charging System Light.....	56, 326
Jump Starting .....	320
Maintenance.....	276
Specifications .....	343
Before Driving .....	193
Belts, Seat .....	8
Beverage Holder .....	98
Body Repair .....	310
Brakes	
Anti-lock System (ABS) .....	220
Break-in, New Linings .....	194
Bulb Replacement .....	295
Fluid .....	267
Parking.....	95
System Indicator .....	57

Wear Indicators .....	219
Braking System.....	219
Break-in, New Car .....	194
Brightness Control, Instruments...	65
Brights, Headlights .....	64
Bulb Replacement	
Back-up Lights .....	295
Brake Lights.....	295
Ceiling Light.....	298
Courtesy Light .....	299
Front Parking Lights.....	294
Front Side Marker Lights.....	293
Headlights .....	292
High-mount Brake Light .....	297
License Plate Lights.....	297
Specifications .....	343
Spotlight.....	299
Trunk Light .....	300
Turn Signal Lights.....	293
Bulbs, Halogen.....	292

CONTINUED

## C

Capacities Chart.....	342
Carbon Monoxide Hazard .....	51
Carrying Cargo .....	204
Cassette Player	
Care .....	181
Operation.....	124, 142, 152, 178
CAUTION, Explanation of .....	ii
CD Changer .....	127, 138, 156, 174
CD Player .....	136, 172
Certification Label.....	340
Chains .....	289
Changing a Flat Tire .....	313
Changing Engine Coolant.....	257
Changing Oil	
How to.....	252
When to.....	240
Charging System Indicator ....	56, 326
Checklist, Before Driving.....	208
Childproof Door Locks .....	79
Child Seats.....	26
Tether Anchorage Points .....	39
Cleaner, Air .....	269
Cleaning	
Aluminum Wheels.....	305

Carpeting .....	306
Exterior .....	304
Fabric .....	307
Interior .....	306
Seat Belts .....	307
Vinyl .....	307
Window .....	308
Climate Control System.....	111
Clock, Setting the .....	96
Clutch Fluid.....	268
CO in the Exhaust .....	349
Coin Box .....	97
Cold Weather, Starting in.....	210
Compact Spare.....	312
Console Compartment .....	97
Consumer Information* .....	355
Controls, Instruments and.....	53
Coolant	
Adding.....	255
Checking.....	200
Proper Solution .....	255
Temperature Gauge .....	61
Corrosion Protection.....	309
Crankcase Emissions Control	
System.....	349
Cruise Control Operation .....	185

Customer Relations Office .....	356
---------------------------------	-----

## D

DANGER, Explanation of .....	ii
Dashboard .....	54
Daytime Running Lights.....	65
Defects, Reporting Safety.....	358
Defogger, Rear Window.....	68
Dimensions.....	342
Dimming the Headlights .....	64
Dipstick	
Automatic Transmission ..	263, 264
Engine Oil.....	198
Directional Signals.....	66
Disc Brake Wear Indicators.....	219
Disposal of Used Oil.....	254
Doors	
Locking and Unlocking.....	73
Power Door Locks.....	74
DOT Tire Quality Grading .....	345
Downshifting, 5-speed Manual	
Transmission.....	211
Drive Belts.....	282
Driver and Passenger Safety.....	5

Driving .....	207
Economy .....	201
In Bad Weather .....	225
In Foreign Countries .....	348
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	282

E
---

Economy, Fuel .....	201
Emergencies on the Road .....	311
Battery, Jump Starting .....	320
Brake System Indicator .....	329
Changing a Flat Tire .....	313
Charging System Indicator .....	326
Checking the Fuses .....	332
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	325
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ....	327
Manually Closing Moonroof ....	330
Overheated Engine .....	323
Emergency Brake .....	95
Emergency Flashers .....	68
Emergency Towing .....	336
Emissions Controls .....	349
Engine	
Belts .....	282
Coolant Temperature Gauge .....	61

Malfunction Indicator	
Lamp .....	56, 327
Oil Pressure Indicator .....	56, 325
Oil, What Kind to Use .....	250
Overheating .....	323
Specifications .....	343
Speed Limiter .....	212, 216
Starting .....	209
Engine Speed Limiter .....	212, 216
Ethanol in Gasoline .....	347
Evaporative Emissions Controls ..	349
Exhaust Fumes .....	51
Expectant Mothers, Use of Seat	
Belts by .....	19
Exterior, Cleaning the .....	304

F
---

Fabric, Cleaning .....	307
Fan, Interior .....	104
Features, Comfort and	
Convenience .....	103
Filling the Fuel Tank .....	194
Filter	
Dust and Pollen .....	282
Oil .....	252

5-speed Manual Transmission	
Checking Fluid Level .....	265
5-speed Manual Transmission	
Shifting the .....	211
Flashers, Hazard Warning .....	68
Flat Tire, Changing a .....	313
Fluids	
Automatic Transmission ..	263, 264
Brake .....	267
Clutch .....	268
Manual Transmission .....	265
Power Steering .....	268
Windshield Washer .....	262
FM Stereo Radio	
Reception .....	170
Folding Rear Seat .....	87
Foreign Countries, Driving in .....	348
Four-way Flashers .....	68
Fuel .....	194
Fill Door and Cap .....	194
Gauge .....	61
Octane Requirement .....	194
Oxygenated .....	347
Tank, Filling the .....	194
Fuses, Checking the .....	332

CONTINUED

## G

Gas Mileage, Improving.....	201
Gasohol .....	347
Gasoline .....	194
Gauge .....	61
Octane Requirement .....	194
Tank, Filling the.....	194
Gas Station Procedures.....	194
Gauges	
Engine Coolant Temperature ....	61
Fuel.....	61
Speedometer .....	60
Tachometer .....	60
Gearshift Lever Positions	
Automatic Transmission.....	213
5-speed Manual	
Transmission.....	211
Glass Cleaning .....	308
Glove Box .....	81

## H

Halogen Headlight Bulbs.....	292
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	68

Headlights.....	64
Aiming.....	292
Automatic Lighting Off.....	65
Daytime Running Lights.....	65
Low Beams, Turning on .....	64
Reminder Chime.....	64
Replacing Halogen Bulbs .....	292
Turning on .....	64
Head Restraints .....	86
Heating and Cooling.....	104
High Altitude, Starting at.....	210
HomeLink Universal	
Transmitter .....	188
Hood, Opening the .....	196
Hydraulic Clutch.....	268
Hydroplaning.....	226

## I

Identification Number, Vehicle....	340
Ignition	
Keys.....	70
Switch.....	72
Timing Control System.....	350
Immobilizer System.....	71
Important Safety Precautions .....	6

Indicators, Instrument Panel.....	55
Infant Restraint .....	30
Infant Seats .....	30
Tether Anchorage Points .....	39
Inflation, Proper Tire .....	284
Inside Mirror .....	93
Inspection, Tire .....	286
Instrument Panel .....	55
Instrument Panel Brightness .....	65
Interior Cleaning.....	306
Interior Lights .....	101
Introduction.....	i

## J

Jacking up the Car .....	315
Jack, Tire .....	314
Jump Starting .....	320

## K

Keys.....	70
-----------	----

**L**

Label, Certification.....	340
Lane Change, Signaling .....	66
Lap/Shoulder Belts .....	42
Lights	
Bulb Replacement .....	292
Indicator.....	55
Parking.....	64
Turn Signal.....	66
LOCK (Ignition Key Position) .....	72
Locks	
Anti-theft Steering Column .....	72
Fuel Fill Door .....	194
Glove Box .....	81
Power Door .....	74
Trunk .....	79
Low Coolant Level.....	200
Lower Gear, Downshifting to a....	211
Low Oil Pressure Indicator ....	56, 325
Lubricant Specifications Chart .....	342
Luggage .....	204

**M**

Maintenance.....	235
Owner Maintenance Checks....	247
Record.....	245
Required Indicator.....	62
Safety.....	236
Schedule .....	240-244
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..	56, 327
Manual Transmission.....	211
Manual Transmission Fluid .....	265
Meters, Gauges.....	60
Methanol in Gasoline .....	347
Mirrors, Adjusting .....	94
Moonroof.....	92
Closing Manually .....	330
Operation .....	92

**N**

Neutral Gear Position.....	214
New Vehicle Break-in .....	194
Normal Shift Speeds.....	212
NOTICE, Explanation of.....	ii
Numbers, Identification.....	340

**O**

Octane Requirement, Gasoline....	194
Odometer.....	60
Odometer, Trip .....	61
Oil	
Change, How to .....	252
Change, When to .....	240
Checking Engine .....	198
Pressure Indicator .....	56, 325
Selecting Proper Viscosity	
Chart .....	251
ON (Ignition Key Position) .....	73
Operation in Foreign Countries...	348
Outside Mirrors .....	93
Overheating, Engine .....	323
Owner Maintenance Checks.....	247
Oxygenated Fuel .....	347

**P**

Panel Brightness Control .....	65
Park Gear Position.....	214
Parking.....	218

CONTINUED



Parking Brake .....	95
Parking Lights.....	64
Parking Over Things that Burn...	351
PGM-FI System.....	350
Polishing and Waxing .....	305
Pollen Filter .....	282
Pre-Drive Safety Checklist .....	11
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts .....	19
Protecting Adults.....	12
Additional Safety Precautions...	20
Advice for Pregnant Women.....	19
Protecting Children .....	21
Protecting Infants.....	30
Protecting Larger Children.....	36
Protecting Small Children .....	33
Using Child Seats with Tethers.....	39
Using LATCH .....	40

## R

Radiator Overheating.....	323
Radio/Cassette Sound System ...	119
Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement ...	296
Rear Seat Armrest .....	88
Rear Seat, Folding .....	87

Rear View Mirror.....	93
Rear Window Defogger .....	68
Reclining the Seat Backs .....	82, 85
Recommended Shift Speeds .....	212
Reminder Lights .....	55
Remote Transmitter.....	75
Replacement Information	
Air Cleaner Element.....	269
Coolant.....	257
Engine Oil and Filter .....	252
Fuses .....	332
Light Bulbs.....	292
Schedule .....	240
Spark Plugs .....	272, 274
Tires .....	287
Wiper Blades.....	279
Replacing Seat Belts After a Crash.....	44
Reserve Tank, Coolant.....	200
Restraint, Child .....	21
Reverse Gear Position.....	214
Rotation, Tire .....	287

## S

Safety Belts.....	8
-------------------	---

Safety Defects, Reporting* .....	358
Safety Features .....	7
Airbags.....	9
Door Locks.....	10
Head Restraints .....	10
Seat Belts.....	8
Seats & Seat-Backs.....	10
Safety Labels, Location of .....	52
Safety Messages .....	ii
Seat Belts .....	8
Additional Information.....	42
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	43
Cleaning.....	307
Lap/Shoulder Belt.....	42
Maintenance.....	44
Reminder Light and Beeper.....	42, 56
System Components.....	42
Use During Pregnancy.....	19
Seats, Adjusting the.....	82
Security System .....	184
Serial Number .....	340
Service Intervals .....	240
Service Manual* .....	359
Service Station Procedures .....	194

Setting the Clock ..... 96  
 Shift Lever Position Indicator ..... 213  
 Shift Lock Release ..... 216  
 Side Airbags ..... 47  
     How Your Side Airbags Work.... 47  
     How The Side Airbag off  
     Indicator Light Works ..... 48  
 Side Marker Lights, Bulb  
     Replacement ..... 293  
 Signaling Turns ..... 66  
 Snow Tires ..... 289  
 Solvent-type Cleaners ..... 304  
 Sound System ..... 119, 131, 147, 164  
 Spare Tire  
     Inflating ..... 312  
     Specifications ..... 344  
 Spark Plugs, Replacing ..... 272, 274  
 Specifications Charts ..... 342  
 Speed Control ..... 185  
 Speed Limiter ..... 212, 216  
 Speedometer ..... 60  
 SRS, Additional Information ..... 45  
     Additional Safety Precautions.... 50  
     How Your Airbags Work ..... 45, 47  
     How Your SRS Indicator  
     Works ..... 47

SRS Components ..... 45  
 SRS Service ..... 50  
 SRS Indicator ..... 47, 57  
 START (Ignition Key Position) ..... 73  
 Starting the Engine ..... 209  
     In Cold Weather at High  
     Altitude ..... 210  
     With a Dead Battery ..... 320  
 Steam Coming from Engine ..... 323  
 Steering Wheel  
     Adjustment ..... 69  
     Anti-theft Column Lock ..... 72  
 Stereo Sound  
     System ..... 119, 131, 147, 164  
 Storing Your Car ..... 301  
 Sun Visor ..... 99  
 Sunglasses Holder ..... 100  
 Supplemental Restraint System  
     Servicing ..... 50  
     SRS Indicator ..... 47, 57  
     System Components ..... 45  
 Synthetic Oil ..... 251

## T

Tachometer ..... 60  
 Taillights, Changing Bulbs in ..... 295  
 Taking Care of the Unexpected .. 311  
 Tape Player ..... 124, 142, 152, 178  
 Technical Descriptions  
     DOT Tire Quality Grading ..... 345  
     Emissions Control Systems ..... 349  
     Oxygenated Fuels ..... 347  
     Three Way Catalytic  
     Converter ..... 351  
 Temperature Gauge ..... 61  
 Tether Attachment Points ..... 39  
 Three Way Catalytic Converter... 351  
 Time, Setting the ..... 96  
 Timing Belt ..... 283  
 Tire Chains ..... 289  
 Tire, How to Change a Flat ..... 313

*CONTINUED*

Tires .....	283
Air Pressure .....	284
Checking Wear .....	286
Compact Spare .....	312
DOT Tire Quality Grading .....	345
Inflation .....	284
Inspection .....	286
Replacing .....	287
Rotating .....	287
Snow .....	289
Specifications .....	344
Tools, Tire Changing .....	313
Towing	
A Trailer .....	227
Emergency Wrecker .....	336
Traction Control System .....	222
TCS Indicator .....	58, 223
TCS ON/OFF Switch .....	223
Transmission	
Checking Fluid Level,	
Automatic .....	263, 264
Checking Fluid Level,	
Manual .....	265
Fluid Selection .....	263, 265
Identification Number .....	339
Shifting the Automatic .....	212

Shifting the Manual .....	211
Treadwear .....	345
Trip Meter .....	61
Trunk .....	79
Emergency Opener .....	80
Opening the .....	79
Open Monitor Light .....	58
Turn Signals .....	66

## U

Underside, Cleaning .....	309
Unexpected, Taking Care	
of the .....	311
Uniform Tire Quality Grading .....	345
Unleaded Gasoline .....	194
Upholstery Cleaning .....	306
Used Oil, How to Dispose of .....	254

## V

Vanity Mirror .....	99
Vehicle Capacity Load .....	205
Vehicle Dimensions .....	342
Vehicle Identification Number .....	340
Vehicle Storage .....	301

VIN .....	340
Vinyl Cleaning .....	307
Viscosity, Oil .....	251

## W

WARNING, Explanation of .....	ii
Warning Labels, Location of .....	52
Warranty Coverages* .....	357
Washer, Windshield	
Checking the Fluid Level .....	262
Operation .....	68
Washing .....	304
Waxing and Polishing .....	305
Wheels	
Adjusting the Steering .....	69
Alignment and Balance .....	286
Compact Spare .....	312
Wrench .....	314
Windows	
Cleaning .....	308
Operating the Power .....	91
Rear, Defogger .....	68
Windshield	
Cleaning .....	66
Washers .....	68

Wipers, Windshield	
Changing Blades.....	279
Operation.....	66
Worn Tires .....	286
Wrecker, Emergency Towing.....	336

\*: U.S. and Canada only

# Service Information Summary

---

## Gasoline:

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 86 or higher.

## Fuel Tank Capacity:

17.12 US gal (64.8 ℓ , 14.26 Imp gal)

## Recommended Engine Oil:

API Premium grade 5W-20 detergent oil (see page [250](#) ).

Oil change capacity (including filter):

4-cylinder models

4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ , 3.8 Imp qt)

6-cylinder models

4.6 US qt (4.4 ℓ , 3.9 Imp qt)

## Automatic Transmission Fluid:

Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid) preferred, or a DEXRON® III ATF as a temporary replacement (see pages [263](#) and [264](#) ).

## 5-speed Manual Transmission

### Fluid:

Honda Manual Transmission Fluid preferred, or an API service SG, SH or SJ, SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 motor oil as a temporary replacement (see page [265](#) ).

### Capacity:

2.0 US qt (1.9 ℓ , 1.7 Imp qt)

## Power Steering Fluid:

Honda Power Steering Fluid preferred, or another brand of power steering fluid as a temporary replacement. Do not use ATF (see page [268](#) ).

## Brake Fluid:

Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 preferred, or a DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid as a temporary replacement (see page [267](#) ).

## Tire Pressure (measured cold):

U.S. DX, and Value Package

29 psi (200 kPa , 2.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

Except U.S. DX, and Value Package

30 psi (210 kPa , 2.1 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)